

MyID MFA and PSM Version 5.0.8

MyID Authentication Server Installation and Configuration Guide

Lutterworth Hall, St Mary's Road, Lutterworth, Leicestershire, LE17 4PS, UK www.intercede.com | info@intercede.com | @intercedemyid | +44 (0)1455 558111



Copyright

© 2001-2025 Intercede Limited. All rights reserved.

Information in this document is subject to change without notice. The software described in this document is furnished exclusively under a restricted license or non-disclosure agreement. Copies of software supplied by Intercede Limited may not be used resold or disclosed to third parties or used for any commercial purpose without written authorization from Intercede Limited and will perpetually remain the property of Intercede Limited. They may not be transferred to any computer without both a service contract for the use of the software on that computer being in existence and written authorization from Intercede Limited.

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or any means electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and recording for any purpose other than the purchaser's personal use without the written permission of Intercede Limited.

Whilst Intercede Limited has made every effort in the preparation of this manual to ensure the accuracy of the information, the information contained in this manual is delivered without warranty, either express or implied. Intercede Limited will not be held liable for any damages caused, or alleged to be caused, either directly or indirectly by this manual.

Licenses and Trademarks

The Intercede[®] and MyID[®] word marks and the MyID[®] logo are registered trademarks of Intercede in the UK, US and other countries.

Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation. Other brands and their products are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders and should be noted as such. All other trademarks acknowledged.

Apache log4net

Apache License Version 2.0, January 2004 http://www.apache.org/licenses/

TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR USE, REPRODUCTION, AND DISTRIBUTION

1. Definitions.

"License" shall mean the terms and conditions for use, reproduction, and distribution as defined by Sections 1 through 9 of this document.

"Licensor" shall mean the copyright owner or entity authorized by the copyright owner that is granting the License.

"Legal Entity" shall mean the union of the acting entity and all other entities that control, are controlled by, or are under common control with that entity. For the purposes of this definition, "control" means (i) the power, direct or indirect, to cause the direction or management of such entity, whether by contract or otherwise, or (ii) ownership of fifty percent (50%) or more of the outstanding shares, or (iii) beneficial ownership of such entity.

"You" (or "Your") shall mean an individual or Legal Entity exercising permissions granted by this License.

"Source" form shall mean the preferred form for making modifications, including but not limited to software source code, documentation source, and configuration files.



"Object" form shall mean any form resulting from mechanical transformation or translation of a Source form, including but not limited to compiled object code, generated documentation, and conversions to other media types.

"Work" shall mean the work of authorship, whether in Source or Object form, made available under the License, as indicated by a copyright notice that is included in or attached to the work (an example is provided in the Appendix below).

"Derivative Works" shall mean any work, whether in Source or Object form, that is based on (or derived from) the Work and for which the editorial revisions, annotations, elaborations, or other modifications represent, as a whole, an original work of authorship. For the purposes of this License, Derivative Works shall not include works that remain separable from, or merely link (or bind by name) to the interfaces of, the Work and Derivative Works thereof.

"Contribution" shall mean any work of authorship, including the original version of the Work and any modifications or additions to that Work or Derivative Works thereof, that is intentionally submitted to Licensor for inclusion in the Work by the copyright owner or by an individual or Legal Entity authorized to submit on behalf of the copyright owner. For the purposes of this definition, "submitted" means any form of electronic, verbal, or written communication sent to the Licensor or its representatives, including but not limited to communication on electronic mailing lists, source code control systems, and issue tracking systems that are managed by, or on behalf of, the Licensor for the purpose of discussing and improving the Work, but excluding communication that is conspicuously marked or otherwise designated in writing by the copyright owner as "Not a Contribution."

"Contributor" shall mean Licensor and any individual or Legal Entity on behalf of whom a Contribution has been received by Licensor and subsequently incorporated within the Work.

2. Grant of Copyright License. Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, each Contributor hereby grants to You a perpetual, worldwide, non-exclusive, no-charge, royalty-free, irrevocable copyright license to reproduce, prepare Derivative Works of, publicly display, publicly perform, sublicense, and distribute the Work and such Derivative Works in Source or Object form.

3. Grant of Patent License. Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, each Contributor hereby grants to You a perpetual, worldwide, non-exclusive, no-charge, royaltyfree, irrevocable (except as stated in this section) patent license to make, have made, use, offer to sell, sell, import, and otherwise transfer the Work, where such license applies only to those patent claims licensable by such Contributor that are necessarily infringed by their Contribution(s) alone or by combination of their Contribution(s) with the Work to which such Contribution(s) was submitted. If You institute patent litigation against any entity (including a cross-claim or counterclaim in a lawsuit) alleging that the Work or a Contribution incorporated within the Work constitutes direct or contributory patent infringement, then any patent licenses granted to You under this License for that Work shall terminate as of the date such litigation is filed.

4. Redistribution. You may reproduce and distribute copies of the Work or Derivative Works thereof in any medium, with or without modifications, and in Source or Object form, provided that You meet the following conditions:

(a) You must give any other recipients of the Work or Derivative Works a copy of this License; and



(b) You must cause any modified files to carry prominent notices stating that You changed the files; and

© You must retain, in the Source form of any Derivative Works that You distribute, all copyright, patent, trademark, and attribution notices from the Source form of the Work, excluding those notices that do not pertain to any part of the Derivative Works; and

(d) If the Work includes a "NOTICE" text file as part of its distribution, then any Derivative Works that You distribute must include a readable copy of the attribution notices contained within such NOTICE file, excluding those notices that do not pertain to any part of the Derivative Works, in at least one of the following places: within a NOTICE text file distributed as part of the Derivative Works; within the Source form or documentation, if provided along with the Derivative Works; or, within a display generated by the Derivative Works, if and wherever such third-party notices normally appear. The contents of the NOTICE file are for informational purposes only and do not modify the License. You may add Your own attribution notices within Derivative Works that You distribute, alongside or as an addendum to the NOTICE text from the Work, provided that such additional attribution notices cannot be construed as modifying the License.

You may add Your own copyright statement to Your modifications and may provide additional or different license terms and conditions for use, reproduction, or distribution of Your modifications, or for any such Derivative Works as a whole, provided Your use, reproduction, and distribution of the Work otherwise complies with the conditions stated in this License.

5. Submission of Contributions. Unless You explicitly state otherwise, any Contribution intentionally submitted for inclusion in the Work by You to the Licensor shall be under the terms and conditions of this License, without any additional terms or conditions. Notwithstanding the above, nothing herein shall supersede or modify the terms of any separate license agreement you may have executed with Licensor regarding such Contributions.

6. Trademarks. This License does not grant permission to use the trade names, trademarks, service marks, or product names of the Licensor, except as required for reasonable and customary use in describing the origin of the Work and reproducing the content of the NOTICE file.

7. Disclaimer of Warranty. Unless required by applicable law or agreed to in writing, Licensor provides the Work (and each Contributor provides its Contributions) on an "AS IS" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF ANY KIND, either express or implied, including, without limitation, any warranties or conditions of TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY, or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. You are solely responsible for determining the appropriateness of using or redistributing the Work and assume any risks associated with Your exercise of permissions under this License.

8. Limitation of Liability. In no event and under no legal theory, whether in tort (including negligence), contract, or otherwise, unless required by applicable law (such as deliberate and grossly negligent acts) or agreed to in writing, shall any Contributor be liable to You for damages, including any direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages of any character arising as a result of this License or out of the use or inability to use the Work (including but not limited to damages for loss of goodwill, work stoppage, computer failure or malfunction, or any and all other commercial damages or losses), even if such Contributor has been advised of the possibility of such damages.



9. Accepting Warranty or Additional Liability. While redistributing the Work or Derivative Works thereof, You may choose to offer, and charge a fee for, acceptance of support, warranty, indemnity, or other liability obligations and/or rights consistent with this License. However, in accepting such obligations, You may act only on Your own behalf and on Your sole responsibility, not on behalf of any other Contributor, and only if You agree to indemnify, defend, and hold each Contributor harmless for any liability incurred by, or claims asserted against, such Contributor by reason of your accepting any such warranty or additional liability.

APPENDIX: How to apply the Apache License to your work.

To apply the Apache License to your work, attach the following boilerplate notice, with the fields enclosed by brackets "[]" replaced with your own identifying information. (Don't include the brackets!) The text should be enclosed in the appropriate comment syntax for the file format. We also recommend that a file or class name and description of purpose be included on the same "printed page" as the copyright notice for easier identification within third-party archives.

Copyright [yyyy] [name of copyright owner]

Licensed under the Apache License, Version 2.0 (the "License"); you may not use this file except in compliance with the License. You may obtain a copy of the License at

http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0

Unless required by applicable law or agreed to in writing, software distributed under the License is distributed on an "AS IS" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF ANY KIND, either express or implied. See the License for the specific language governing permissions and limitations under the License. ---



Conventions used in this document

- · Lists:
 - Numbered lists are used to show the steps involved in completing a task when the order is important.
 - Bulleted lists are used when the order is unimportant or to show alternatives.
- Bold is used for menu items and for labels.

For example:

- Record a valid email address in 'From' email address.
- Select Save from the File menu.
- *Italic* is used for emphasis:

For example:

- Copy the file *before* starting the installation.
- Do not remove the files before you have backed them up.
- Bold and italic hyperlinks are used to identify the titles of other documents.

For example: "See the *Release Notes* for further information."

Unless otherwise explicitly stated, all referenced documentation is available on the product installation media.

- A fixed width font is used where the identification of spaces is important, including filenames, example SQL queries and any entries made directly into configuration files or the database.
- **Notes** are used to provide further information, including any prerequisites or configuration additional to the standard specifications.

For example:

Note: This issue only occurs if updating from a previous version.

• Warnings are used to indicate where failure to follow a particular instruction may result in either loss of data or the need to manually configure elements of the system.

For example:

Warning: You must take a backup of your database before making any changes to it.



Contents

MyID Authentication Server Installation and Configuration Guide	
Copyright	
Conventions used in this document	c
4 Introduction	، ۱ ۱۰
1 1 Considerations	۲4
1.1.1 Svetom requiremente	
1.1.2 Dights and normissions	ء
1.1.2 Rights and permissions	۱۰۱۰
1.1.5 Password Dreach Databases	Is
1.1.4 Flight availability	4. 1.
1.1.5 Database backup and restoration	
1.1.6 Developers	4
1.1.7 Language requirements	۱4 ۸
1.2 Internet connectivity	
1.2.1 Mobile Push Authentication	1:
1.2.2 Password Breach Database	1:
1.2.3 Licensing	
1.2.4 External Access Server (Windows Desktop Agent)	
1.3 Licensing	
1.3.3 Free license	
1.4 Change history	
2 Design and deployment scenarios	
2.1 Mobile push authentication	
2.1.1 Overview	
2.1.2 Public Push Networks	19
2.2 Passwordless MFA	
2.2.1 Mobile Push	19
2.2.2 Passwordless for Windows	
2.2.3 The MyID Server Password Vault	
2.2.4 The Windows Desktop Agent	
2.2.5 The Domain Controller Agent	
2.3 Active Directory permissions	
2.4 Integration with MyID CMS	
2.4.1 Required information	
2.4.2 High Availability integration	
2.5 Deployment checklist	
3 Multi-Factor Authentication technology	
3.1 Mobile Push authentication technology	
3.2 Grid Pattern technology	
3.2.1 How it works – example	
3.3 Phrase authentication technology	



	3.3.1 Authentication scenario #1 – deviceless authentication	.31
	3.3.2 Authentication scenario #2 – multi-factor authentication	. 31
	3.4 One Time Code technology	.32
	3.5 Standard OATH TOTP	.32
	3.6 YubiKey OTP	. 32
	3.7 FIDO Passkeys for the Enterprise	. 33
	3.8 Authentication Technology against Factor type	. 34
	3.9 Automatic MFA determination and SSO assurance levels	. 34
	3.9.1 Hierarchy	. 34
	3.10 Federation server	35
	3.10.1 ADFS replacement	. 35
4 D	eployment	.36
	4.1 High Availability and certificates	. 37
	4.2 Installing the MyID Authentication Server	.38
	4.3 Uninstalling the MyID Authentication Server	. 42
	4.3.1 Active Directory metadata	. 43
	4.4 Updates and upgrades	.43
	4.5 Installing an update	.44
	4.6 Installing an upgrade	. 48
	4.6.1 Upgrading from version 4.2	.50
	4.6.2 Windows Desktop Agent compatibility	. 50
	4.7 Certificate export and import	51
	4.7.1 Exporting a certificate from an existing MyID Authentication Server	.51
	4.7.2 Import a certificate to a new MyID Authentication Server	58
	4.8 MyID Authentication Server Directory configuration	.64
	4.8.1 Directory Configuration Wizard	. 64
	4.8.2 Add users to the MyID Administrators Group	. 67
	4.9 MyID license configuration	.68
	4.9.1 Getting a free 10 user license or a 30-day trial license	.68
	4.9.2 Importing an offline license file	.72
	4.9.3 Entering an existing license key	. 75
	4.10 MyID Password Security Management Wizard	. 77
	4.10.1 Starting the Password Security Management Wizard	.78
	4.11 YubiKey OTP Configuration Wizard	.84
	4.11.1 Starting the YubiKey OTP Configuration Wizard	. 84
5 A	dministering the MyID Authentication Server	89
	5.1 MyID Management Console views	. 89
	5.1.1 OUs / Containers view	. 90
	5.1.2 All Users view	.90
	5.1.3 Updating PSM users	. 91
	5.2 Global settings walkthrough	. 96
	5.2.1 General tab	98
	5.2.2 RADIUS tab	.99
	5.2.3 Alerts tab	101
	5.2.4 Remediation tab	102







5.9.5 Managing the DADILIS Libera rale	202
5.0.5 Managing the RADIOS Osers fole	
5.9 1 Accessing the Web Management Portal	230
5.9.2.1 Ising the Web Management Portal	
5.9.3 Viewing all user events	
5.9.4 Viewing and disabling devices for a user account	23/
5.9.5 Removing a device from a user account	234
5.10 Web Management Portal dashboards	
5.10 1 System Status	230
5 10 2 Multi Eactor Authentication	230
5 10 3 Password Security	239
5.11 Customizing the portal interfaces	
5.11.1 Portal authentication type settings	
5.11.2 IdD Logon Dago sustemization	
5.11.2 SSD customization	
5.11.4 Advanced Self Service Portal III customization	
5.12 PADILIS communication	
5.12 1 Mobile Push MEA	
5.12.2.2 stop logops (Access Challenge)	
5.12.2 Z-Step logons (Access-Challenge)	202
5 12 4 RADIUS server ports and protocols	252
5 12 5 Adding a RADIUS client	
5 12 6 RADIUS policies	256
6 Configuring MVID CMS settings	257
7 Configuring the PSM password policy	259
7.1 Configuring the MvID Password Policy settings	259
7 1 1 The PSM Users role	259
7.2 Main settings	260
7.2.1 Primary password policy	260
7.2.2 Complexity rules	263
7.2.3 Dynamic password expiry	270
7.2.4 Exception password policy	272
7.3 Modifying the default domain policy	274
7.4 Configuring custom password blacklist checking	
7.4.1 Wildcard usage within local blacklist	
8 Advanced configuration	277
8.1 Specifying Active Directory Domain Controllers	
8.1.1 Specifying Global Catalog Servers	
8.1.2 Specifying Domain Controllers	
8.2 Adding a trusted SSL certificate for secure connections	
8.3 Active Directory timing	
8.3.1 Domain access timeout	279
8.3.2 Domain Controller refresh	
8.4 Diagnostics logging	
8.4.1 Enabling logging	





8.4.2 Setting the logging location	 0
9 Integration with external systems	 1



1 Introduction

MyID Authentication Server is a multi-factor authentication system that provides:

- Token, tokenless, device, and deviceless Multi-Factor Authentication.
- Mobile Push Authentication.
- A NIST 800-63B compliant Password Security Management solution.
- Self-service password reset and unlocking.
- Web Service API and RADIUS interfaces for connectivity.
- Multiple Authentication technologies:
 - Grid Pattern pattern-based authentication.
 - Phrase random character authentication.
 - One Time Code OATH (TOTP) compliant authentication.
 - YubiKey Yubico YubiKey hardware token support.
 - FIDO2 / Passkey authentication.
 - Google / Microsoft Authenticators (OATH compliant).

Note: MyID MFA and MyID PSM were previously known as Authlogics products. Authlogics is now an Intercede Group company and the products have been rebranded accordingly. The term 'Authlogics' may still appear in certain areas of the product.

1.1 Considerations

1.1.1 System requirements

The supported operating systems for MyID Authentication Server are:

• Windows Server 2022

Note: The MyID Reporting Dashboard requires the Microsoft KB5023705 update, or the latest Windows Updates, on Windows Server 2022. This is due to a known OS issue listed by Microsoft as:

This update addresses an issue that affects the Get-WinEvent cmdlet. It fails. The system throws InvalidOperationException

- Windows Server 2019
- Windows Server 2016

Minimum .NET Framework version: 6

The hardware requirements for MyID Authentication Server are:

	Minimum	Recommended
CPU	Dual Core 1.2 GHz	Quad Core 2.5 GHz
RAM	4Gb RAM	8Gb RAM
Disk	Single Disk	Dual Disk



1.1.2 Rights and permissions

Local administrator rights are required to perform the installation process of the MyID Authentication Server on a Windows Server.

The Directory Configuration Wizard requires either:

- Enterprise Admin rights, or:
- Domain Admin rights on the following:
 - The domain of which the Authentication server is a member.
 - Each domain containing user accounts that will be used with MyID.

Once the Directory Configuration Wizard is complete, administrators need to be a member of the MyID Administrators group and have local administration rights on the member server.

1.1.3 Password Breach Databases

Intercede has the following versions of its Password Breach Database:

Offline Password Breach Database (Min)

This is the minimum offline database. It is included by default with MyID Authentication Server and contains the top one million breached passwords.

This is infrequently updated.

Offline Password Breach Database (Full)

This is the full offline database. It is a separate download containing over 8 billion breached passwords.

This is infrequently updated.

Cloud Password Breach Database

An Internet hosted database containing over 8 billion breached credentials.

This is regularly updated.

The Offline Password Breach Database can reduce the reliance on Cloud Password Breach lookups.

If a password is not found in the minimum Offline Password Breach Database, then, unless disabled by policy, the MyID Cloud Password Breach Database is also checked.

The full Offline Password Breach Database containing over 8 billion breached passwords is available as a separate add-on download from:

www.intercede.com/support/downloads

When the full database is installed, it may be possible to disable Cloud Password Breach Database lookups.

Note: The MyID Cloud Password Breach Database is regularly updated, but the Offline Password Breach Database is not. Unless a fully offline solution is required, Intercede recommends leaving Cloud Password Breach Database lookups enabled to ensure that the most recent entries are being checked.



1.1.4 High availability

MyID is designed for multiple deployment sizes, topologies, and configurations.

High availability is achieved by ensuring that there are multiple instances of the user database and the authentication server.

To ensure the user database is highly available, there must be multiple Domain Controllers in each domain. Active Directory automatically replicates the domain information to all Domain Controllers in the domain, including MyID data.

To ensure high availability of the MyID Authentication servers, simply install multiple instances on separate servers that are members of the same AD Forest. Each server uses standard Windows mechanisms to locate and work with the most appropriate Domain Controller, or Domain Controllers and Global Catalogs can be manually specified. Each server can be addressed separately as a Primary/Secondary configuration, for example RADIUS1 and RADIUS2, or they can be clustered through the built-in Windows Network Load Balancing and treated as a single entity.

1.1.5 Database backup and restoration

All user metadata is stored in Active Directory and no data is stored on the local server. When you perform a standard Active Directory backup, all MyID data is automatically backed up along with the Active Directory.

You can recover a by reinstalling MyID MFA and PSM from the ground up – the new installation is re-attached to the existing data in the Active Directory and continues functioning as before. Exceptions to this include any custom changes to the web UI and NPS (RADIUS) policy changes.

1.1.6 Developers

For developer-specific information regarding the Web Services Application Programming Interface (REST), see the *MyID Authentication Server Developers Guide*.

1.1.7 Language requirements

The MyID Authentication Server is compatible with multi-lingual versions of Windows Server; however, it is only available in English. Product support and documentation are also available only in English.

Elements of the Microsoft Management Console (MMC) are shown in the language of the server, for example **OK** buttons, however, text specific to MyID is in English only.

1.2 Internet connectivity

The MyID Authentication Server requires Internet Access for certain functions. The majority of required connectivity is outbound to the Internet. All URLs are bound to the authlogics.com DNS domain for easier management.

You may not require all access, depending on your chosen product functionality.



1.2.1 Mobile Push Authentication

When using Mobile Push authentication for MFA, the MyID Authentication Server requires outbound Internet access to the following destination (depending on the capabilities of the network firewall):

Destination URL:

https://*.ccp.authlogics.com/api/*

Host:

*.ccp.authlogics.com on port 443

Note: Devices running the Authlogics Authenticator app also require access to the above URL. While this would normally be available when they are connected to GSM / public networks, they may require explicit access when on corporate Wi-Fi.

1.2.2 Password Breach Database

When using Password Security Management and the MyID Cloud Password Breach Database lookups are enabled, the MyID Authentication Server requires outbound Internet access to the following destination (depending on the capabilities of the network firewall):

Destination URL:

https://passwordsecurityapi.authlogics.com/api/*

Host:

passwordsecurityapi.authlogics.com on port 443

Note: Domain Controller Agents do not require direct access to the Internet as they perform lookups using the Authentication Server. However, there is a GPO setting to enable Internet access as a fallback and, if enabled, Internet access is required.

1.2.3 Licensing

Unless an offline license has been provided, the MyID Authentication Server requires outbound Internet access to the following destination (depending on the capabilities of the network firewall):

Destination URL:

https:// licencing.authlogics.com/api/*

Host:

licencing.authlogics.com on port 443

Warning: If access to the licensing URL is not available the license may fail, and the Authentication Server may cease to function.



1.2.4 External Access Server (Windows Desktop Agent)

When using the Windows Desktop Agent (optional) configured with an External Access Server, the MyID Authentication Server requires inbound access from the Internet to the External Access Server instance of the Authentication Server on port 14444 (by default):

The External Access Server role is a separate IIS site on the MyID Authentication Server that hosts a limited API set to support the Windows Desktop Agent. It runs on a separate port to the rest of the server.

It is recommended that the Windows Desktop Agents are configured to use port 443 to ensure good connectivity over the Internet. To facilitate this a reverse proxy or port translator should be used to redirect external 443 traffic to the internal port 14444. Alternatively, the External Access Server IIS instance can be configured within the IIS Manager to use port 443 on a separate IP address.

1.3 Licensing

MyID MFA and PSM solutions are licensed on a per-user basis with each user requiring a license. A license must be installed onto each instance of a MyID Directory. Contact *sales@intercede.com* for any licensing enquiries.

To install a MyID license, run the Licence Configuration Wizard within the MyID Authentication Server Management Console.

1.3.1 License functionality

The functionality available in the MyID Authentication Server depends on the types of license that you have installed. All solution features are broken down into two license types:

- Password Security Management (PSM)
- Multi-Factor Authentication (MFA)

A product key or license is issued for each license type.

Note: For detailed information on the license types please refer to the license agreement document embedded within the installation package.

1.3.2 Evaluation license

MyID is available for trial use for an unlimited number of users with a 30-day time-limit. You can request and instantly install an evaluation license through the Licence Configuration Wizard.

1.3.3 Free license

MyID MFA and PSM solutions are available free of charge for up to ten users with no time limit. You can request and instantly install a free license through the Licence Configuration Wizard.



1.4 Change history

Version	Description
IMP2065-01	Reformatted and released with MyID MFA and PSM version 5.0.7.
	Added information on setting the SSP and IdP to have high-contrast UI for accessibility.
	Updated information on Grid customization.
	Added the separation of the Add and Remove Token devices settings.
	Added information on Authenticator App Cloud Location regions.
	Added information on multi-lingual support in the SSP.
IMP2065-5.0.8	Released with MFA and PSM version 5.0.8.



2 Design and deployment scenarios

The MyID Authentication Server is an enterprise-class solution scaling from stand-alone single instance installations to highly availability multi-master Active Directory-integrated deployments. A single MyID server can support multiple Active Directory Domains in a single forest and the server can be a member of any domain within the forest. User accounts can be Active Directory user accounts or external accounts which do not have an Active Directory user account.

A variety of authentication tokens can be used with the MyID Authentication Server including SMS/Text message, email, offline OTP (pattern or OATH), Mobile Push, biometrics, FIDO2, Passkey, and YubiKey hardware tokens.

The MyID Authentication Server is designed to integrate with a multitude of remote access solutions and applications. The core of MyID is the Authentication Server, which is an IdP Server and also provides REST APIs and a RADIUS interface. MyID also provides agents for various third-party systems to allow for direct integration; for example, Windows Desktop, Remote Desktop Gateway, and Exchange Servers.

Any remote access concentrator or application that can interact with REST Services or RADIUS can communicate with the MyID Authentication Server. Integration guides and sample code are provided for common deployments to assist with the integration into third-party party systems.

The MyID Authentication server is a Federated Identity Provider (IdP) capable of being used as a replacement for ADFS and supports standard protocols of SAML 2.0 and OpenID Connect.

The MyID Authentication Server is a complete NIST 800-63B compliant password policy and management solution for Active Directory. It can ensure that users are not using known breached or shared passwords in real-time, as well as with retrospective checking and automatic remediation.

The MyID Authentication Server Management console uses Microsoft Management Console technology. Administration rights are granted through roles that are typically mapped to Active Directory groups.

For high-availability deployment scenarios with numerous users, user information can be stored across multiple domains in an Active Directory Forest. Multiple MyID servers can be deployed within an Active Directory Forest for multiple points of presence, or in the same location with built-in Network Load Balancing for full High Availability.



2.1 Mobile push authentication

2.1.1 Overview

MyID Mobile Push MFA is designed to work seamlessly when online or offline, and does not rely on Microsoft, Apple, or Google for timely delivery.

If the user is offline, they can enter a short alpha-numeric OTP generated by the same MyID Authenticator app they use when they are online.



MyID MFA Mobile Push MFA Logon Process Flow

2.1.2 Public Push Networks

App notifications through the Microsoft, Apple, and Google Public Push Networks can be unreliable and they are not a guaranteed delivery service. MyID does not rely on Public Push Networks for core functionality; therefore, no authentication data or sensitive information is contained within the Public Push Networks notification.

If the Public Push Networks are functioning as expected, it creates a better user experience, however, if not then the user can still load the Authenticator App themselves and log in as normal.

2.2 Passwordless MFA

2.2.1 Mobile Push

Mobile Push MFA is most commonly deployed as a passwordless authentication solution; however, it can be used in conjunction with a password if required.

This can be connected to applications through RADIUS, Web API, or various agents including for Windows Desktop Agent.

2.2.2 Passwordless for Windows

The MyID Windows Desktop Agent allows users to log on to Windows without having to enter their Windows password. This form of passwordless logon is achieved by storing the Active Directory Password in a secure password vault that is seamlessly delivered to the Windows desktop on the user's behalf when logging on.

Logging on to Windows in this way ensures compatibility with existing Windows applications that rely on Active Directory credentials. Passwordless logon is disabled by default and can be enabled by setting the **Enable Passwordless Logon** group policy option on the Windows Desktop Agent to remove the Active Directory password for logon.



2.2.3 The MyID Server Password Vault

The MyID Authentication Server uses Active Directory as a database. Therefore, all its data is physically stored on the Domain Controllers, including the Server Password Vault. The password vault is disabled by default and must be explicitly enabled before use.

During the MyID Authentication Server installation, a unique certificate is generated with an RSA 2048-bit key pair; this is used to encrypt the password data. This certificate can be replaced at any time by running the Certificate Configuration Wizard on the server, which reencrypts the data with the new certificate key pair. The MyID Password Vault information can only be decrypted if the certificate's private key is available.

2.2.4 The Windows Desktop Agent

The Windows Desktop Agent is designed to run on a Windows desktop or Windows server machine to provide Multi-Factor Authentication security and Passwordless logons. The agent is fully managed and deployable through Active Directory group policy options for easy and granular administration.

The agent can work in an offline scenario if there is no connection available to the MyID Authentication Server.

For more information, see the Windows Desktop Agent Integration Guide.



ive Directory as nor

MyID MFA Windows Desktop Password-less logon process First Online Logon





MyID MFA Windows Desktop Password-less logon process Regular Online Logon



2.2.5 The Domain Controller Agent

The Domain Controller Agent is a lightweight service designed to capture password changes made on the Windows Domain, process them against policy to see if they comply, and store them securely in the MyID Server Password Vault. This ensures that all new passwords comply with the latest NIST SP 800-63B guidance.

The Domain Controller Agent also keeps the Active Directory password database and the MyID Server Password Vault synchronized at all times regardless of which mechanism is used to change or reset an Active Directory password. Administrators can use Domain Controller Agent to ensure that passwords used within the environment are unique and to prevent users from sharing passwords internally.





2.3 Active Directory permissions

The following groups are created in the Windows Domain that is selected when you first run the Directory Configuration Wizard. Members of the Enterprise Admins and Domain Admins group *always* have full access to MyID independently of these groups. This behavior cannot be changed due to the Active Directory security model that means that members of these groups always can take ownership of *any* object and change its permissions.

Group name	Туре	Members	Member of	Provides access to
MyID Authentication Server Administrators	Universal Group	The installation user account.	Builtin Administrators.	Full admin access to the MMC and Web Management Portal.
MyID Authentication Server Operators	Universal Group	No members by default.	Not a member of any group.	Limited admin access only through the Web Management Portal.
MyID Authentication Servers	Universal Group	The Authlogics server account.	Builtin Administrators.	Full access to directory info.



If you are upgrading from V4.x Authentication Server deployments, the pre-existing Active Directory groups originally created remain. These Active Directory security groups are:

Group name	Туре	Members	Member of	Provides access to
Authlogics Administrators	Universal Group	The installation user account.	Builtin Administrators.	Full admin access to the MMC and Web Management Portal.
Authlogics Operators	Universal Group	No members by default.	Not a member of any group.	Limited admin access only through the Web Management Portal.
Authlogics Servers	Universal Group	The Authlogics server account.	Builtin Administrators.	Full access to directory info.

Note: The Builtin Administrators group has full administrator access to the Domain Controllers and the Active Directory. Unlike the Domain Admins group, the Builtin Administrators group does not have administrator access to any member servers in the domain, as it is a Domain Local security group.

For information regarding granular application of rights within the Active Directory, contact Intercede customer support.

For further information about Active Directory groups and permissions, see:

docs.microsoft.com/en-us/windows-server/identity/ad-ds/plan/security-bestpractices/appendix-b--privileged-accounts-and-groups-in-active-directory

2.4 Integration with MyID CMS

MyID CMS can manage MyID Authentication Server user accounts.

The integration is performed through the MyID WebAPI which must be configured prior to use.

MyID CMS must be configured to connect to the MyID Authentication Server through the MFA Broker. This enables MyID CMS to create MyID Authentication Server users, provision MFA technologies, and change various account settings. For more information about the MFA Broker, contact your Intercede account manager.

The MyID Authentication Server can notify MyID CMS when an event occurs, such as a user completes setting up a new MFA device. To facilitate this configuration of MyID CMS, information is required in the MyID Authentication Server.

Note: MyID CMS version 12.9 or higher is required for integration.



2.4.1 Required information

The following information is required complete the integration:

- The MyID CMS Server URL For example: https://myid/web.oauth2
- The MyID CMS Callback URL For example: https://myid/MFABroker
- The MyID CMS Client ID used to authenticate For example:

myid.notifications

- The MyID CMS Client Scope used to authenticate
 - For example:

myid.notifications.basic

The MyID CMS Client Secret used to authenticate
For example:

4116e8f9-92e2-48b1-8616-5fb3d130b91d

See section 6, Configuring MyID CMS settings.

2.4.2 High Availability integration

You only need to configure your MyID CMS settings on *one* MyID Authentication Server and the settings are replicated to all the servers in the Active Directory Forest.

The MyID Authentication Server works on a multi-master High Availability model, not Active-Passive, therefore any MyID Authentication Server is able to update user account details. Due to this, all MyID Authentication Servers must be able to access the **MyID CMS OAuth2 Authentication Service** and **MyID CMS MFA Broker Service** URLs.

MyID CMS can be configured to use any MyID Authentication Server for configuration changes. Specifying more than one server, or using a load balanced address, is recommended.



2.5 Deployment checklist

#	Item	Recommended	Check
1	A Physical or Virtual Machine to Operating System.	A Virtual Machine with 4 CPU cores and 8Gb RAM	
2	A Windows Server 2016 or higher OS on which to install MyID Authentication Server.	Windows Server 2019	
3	Internet Connectivity (HTTPS) from MyID Server for licensing and activation.	Allow the destination of: https://*.authlogics.com	
4	An administrative account with rights to install the software and configure the directory service on the Active Directory root domain.	An Enterprise Admin or Domain Admin account	
5	Server downtime authorization to reboot the server post-installation.		
6	Email / SMTP server settings and credentials (if required) to allow the server to send email tokens and provision emails.	Use an Exchange server with integrated authentication.	
7	Plan the DNS name to use in the URL for the Self Service Portal that users use to access their account.	Use: ssp. <mycompany>.com</mycompany>	
8	PSM only: Plan the deployment of the password policy. Must apply to all Domain Controllers and MyID Authentication Servers.	Use the policy defaults where possible.	
9	Plan which MFA technology to provision users for.	Grid Pattern Authentication suits most use cases and is the most secure.	
10	Plan if MFA devices are to be used or only deviceless authentication.	Use MFA where high security or compliance is required, otherwise use deviceless for convenience while improving security over passwords.	
11	Plan which MyID agents to deploy or how to integrate with third-party systems.	Use the industry-standard RADIUS for networking equipment and the WebAPI for application integration.	
12	Plan which applications can use SSO / Federation (for example, SAML 2.0, OpenID Connect, or WS-Fed).	Use MyID IdP services or Microsoft ADFS with the MyID ADFS Agent is still supported.	



3 Multi-Factor Authentication technology

As the usage of Information Technology has increased exponentially, the need for security of these systems has increased proportionately. Traditionally, authentication is solely performed by the user providing a valid username and password. This is known as single-factor authentication as the user *knows* all parts of the authentication process. Passwords have been proven to be unsecure, therefore additional authentication factors are now required.

The increase of security provided by multi-factor (typically two-factor) authentication is that users must now both *have something* and *know something* in the authentication process.

The *something* that they *have* is usually a physical hardware device, like a key fob, that generates a specific unique One Time Pin (OTP). This OTP must also be entered as part of the authentication process.

Although these hardware token devices have improved security significantly, they do have certain limitations and incur a cost overhead in both implementation and on-going maintenance. Furthermore, they typically still need to be used together with a password and therefore do not provide a path towards Passwordless logons.

Intercede provides a multitude of hardware and software-based authentication technologies and delivery mechanisms to suit many scenarios, all while keeping down the logistical overhead of hardware tokens down.

3.1 Mobile Push authentication technology

MyID Mobile Push is designed to simply send a notification to a user's phone to authenticate.



Once the notification is tapped, the MyID Authenticator app loads and the user may be required to authenticate with biometrics. The MyID Authenticator app was previously known as the Authlogics Authenticator app.



The user is presented with information about the logon and can choose to **Allow** or **Deny** the request.



If the user taps **Allow**, then the application they are trying to access completes its logon process.

However, if the user taps **Deny**, they are asked why. The answer is recorded on the MyID Authentication Server. If they stated they did not make this logon request, the server tracks future logon attempts and automatically throttles sending new Push requests to prevent MFA fatigue.

MyID Mobile Push helps to mitigate typical Push vulnerabilities:

- MFA fatigue protection:
 - Requires an initial offline logon for untrusted browser connections.
 - Dynamic throttling for legacy (for example, RADIUS) / non-browser channels when a **Denied** logon is recorded by the user.
- Does not send any OTP or secret information through Apple or Google servers, so it therefore cannot be tampered with in transit.
- The Authlogics App responds to a logon request when open, even if a network Push is not received through Apple or Google, to prevent denial of service attacks or network delays.



3.2 Grid Pattern technology

Grid Pattern authentication technology (formerly known as PINgrid) mitigates the security limitations of the traditional OTP tokens by generating a One Time Code derived from a grid of numbers. These grids are specific to each user and change every minute, reflecting different numbers. The additional security of Grid Pattern is that the user *also* needs to *know* a unique pattern to extrapolate an OTP.

To protect against automated brute force attacks, MyID MFA includes **Account Lockout** functionality, where a user's account is locked out either indefinitely or for a pre-configured period when a passcode is entered incorrectly several times. Grid Pattern authentication mitigates even the threats of keylogging, screen scraping and shoulder surfing attacks.

Grid Pattern authentication is available in one, two, and three-factor authentication methodologies. Grids can be views within an app, on a web page, sent via TEXT/SMS or email, or used offline through the MyID Authenticator app in the App Store.

3.2.1 How it works – example

User pattern:



Pattern on a challenge grid:

2	4	3	1	2	5
2	3	0	1	2	0
1	3	4	1	4	0
1	0	3	5	5	4
2	4	0	2	4	3
5	5	0	1	5	3



One Time Code:

133125

In a 'Prove it!' situation the pattern is used with a challenge grid:

- A One Time Password (OTP) is hidden in the grid.
- Only the person who knows the secret pattern can find the OTP.

Grid Pattern authentication technology is a true One Time Pin authentication solution, as all valid passcodes entered can be used only once, even if the second authentication attempt occurs within the same period from the same device.

Note: Tokens can be sent only using email or SMS by clients that are *online*. No offline delivery is supported.

3.3 Phrase authentication technology

Phrase authentication (formerly known as PINphrase) uses some authentication methods that have become a de facto standard in the banking industry to provide a simple to use but efficient and cost-effective authentication solution.

Phrase authentication is based on a passphrase question and answer system that prompts the user to enter random characters from the answer to a randomly chosen question.

Unlike passwords, the answers to the questions are typically things that the user is unlikely to forget, which reduces helpdesk calls, limits resets, and further cuts costs. Since the user is only ever entering part of the answer, for example letters two, five and second last character, during each login the user is asked to enter different letters, and from different answers, making the response a One Time Code.

The full answer is not revealed during the login, which makes Phrase authentication ideal for both deviceless and Multi-Factor Authentication. Phrase authentication can also be configured to randomly select letters from different questions to further enhance security.

An administrator can configure multiple common questions for things that users generally know an answer for and can then specify how many of the questions a user must provide an answer for. For example, an administrator may set a scenario where the user must provide answers for at least four of the ten supplied questions.

By default, a user is assigned a Codeword – a randomly chosen dictionary word which can be used for first login.

For example, a new user called Bob Jones is enabled and his mobile phone details are recorded. He provides answers to at least six questions from a pool. He chooses the following:

Question	Answer
Place of birth?	Seattle
Pet's name?	Tigger
Memorable place?	Springfield
Mother's maiden name?	Watson
Memorable date and time (YYYYMMDDHHMM)	201101021937
First school?	Winchester



3.3.1 Authentication scenario #1 – deviceless authentication

Bob wants to log on to an Internet banking site. He goes to the website and types in his username. He is then presented with a question from the answered pool. He is asked to enter specific characters from the answer.

Please provide the first, third, fourth and the last characters from your memorable place.

To authenticate, Bob enters: S R I D.

3.3.2 Authentication scenario #2 – multi-factor authentication

This requires a physical device that Bob receives the question and random positions (the soft token) on. Typically, this device is a mobile phone, as the mobile phone number is unique to the user.

Bob wants to log on to an Internet banking site. He goes to the website and types in his username. Once Bob enters his username, the Phrase authentication server detects that the logon process for Bob has started. A challenge is generated and sent as an SMS/Text message to Bob's mobile device as follows:

Phrase: Please provide the second, third, fifth, and penultimate characters from your place of birth.

To authenticate, Bob enters: A L S R.

A key part of MyID Phrase authentication is that both the deviceless and Multi-Factor methods have an identical look and feel to the user. The only difference is where the challenge message is displayed.

In cases where mobile phone reception cannot be guaranteed and instant message retrieval may not always be possible, Phrase authentication can pre-send tokens. Pre-sending tokens ensure that the user always has a token on their device prior to the authentication attempt. As soon as the token is used, the next token is sent to the user's mobile device ready to be used for the next login.

Note: Tokens can be sent only using email or SMS by clients that are *online*. No offline delivery is supported.



3.4 One Time Code technology

MyID One Time Code (formerly known as PINpass) is an OATH RFC compliant two-factor authentication solution which utilizes soft tokens to reduce the costs associated with hardware key fobs. One Time Code OTPs are delivered to mobile phones using SMS text messages or as an email for even more flexibility and cost savings.

One Time Codes give administrators the ability to pre-send one or more OTPs so that the user always has an OTP on their mobile device before logging on. As soon as the last OTP is used, then a new set of OTPs are sent to the user ready for future logon attempts. Alternatively, a One Time Code can be used offline from the MyID Authenticator app in the App Store.

To increase security and convenience, administrators can configure users to provide an Active Directory password or static PIN with the One Time Pin. A static pin can be entered, before, after, or even in the middle of the OTP code making it more difficult for a key logger to differentiate between the OTC code and the user's static PIN.

When a user is configured with a real-time token and attempts to login, they enter their unique login name and One Time Code sends a six-to-eight-digit OTP to their mobile phone using SMS or an email address. The user then enters the OTC along with either their AD password or a static PIN, depending on the configuration.

The login process is similar for a user who is configured with a pre-send token, except that a code is not sent to the user after they enter their username as they already have a code on their phone. Instead, a new code is only sent after they login for use during the next login.

Note: Tokens can be sent only using email or SMS by clients that are *online*. No offline delivery is supported.

3.5 Standard OATH TOTP

MyID MFA supports standard software OATH time-based one-time passwords (TOTPs) through tokens such as the Microsoft and Google Authenticator apps. With this, users are no longer required to download the MyID Authenticator app (previously known as the Authlogics Authenticator app) and can add MyID MFA to their Microsoft and Google Authenticator app profile.

As with the MyID OTC solution, standard OATH authenticators use soft tokens to reduce the costs associated with hardware key fobs. One Time Code OTPs are generated on the mobile phones out-of-band without the need for the mobile device to have signal or sufficient data.

As with other MyID MFA technologies, Standard OATH support extends to offline logins for our MyID Authentication agents.

3.6 YubiKey OTP

If hardware tokens are required, MyID supports YubiKey OTP tokens from Yubico. YubiKey OTP tokens are USB devices that do not have a battery, do not expire, and work with any OS.

To increase security and convenience, administrators can configure users to provide an Active Directory password or static PIN with the YubiKey OTP token. A static pin can be entered, before generating the YubiKey OTP code to ensure that the multi-factor requirements are satisfied as there is something they *have* (the YubiKey token) and something they *know* (the static PIN).



3.7 FIDO Passkeys for the Enterprise

Passkeys are based on the FIDO standard and enable cryptography-based phishingresistant authentication. By combining high security with a passwordless user experience, Passkeys are revolutionizing the consumer authentication experience.

However, it is difficult for enterprises to gain the benefits Passkey-based authentication brings, as by design they do not enable the level of management and integration enterprises require.

By bringing enterprise managed FIDO passkeys into the MyID MFA product, organizations can now easily FIDO-enable multiple applications and deploy passkeys to end users, enhancing security and improving the user experience.

MyID MFA acts as both a FIDO authentication server and a passkey issuance solution. End users authenticate to MyID MFA with their passkey, and by support for standard federated identity protocols, MyID MFA provides authentication services to multiple applications including cloud, on-premise, and Windows desktop logon.

Note: The FIDO Credential Provider does not work over RDP; the device is not passed through. If you plug a FIDO token in on the client, the token does not show up in the RDP session. FIDO token Web Sign-On and browser authentication over RDP work on Windows Server 2022 but not on Windows Server 2019.

There are multiple types of Passkeys supported by MyID MFA, enabling customers to choose the best balance of security and costs that fits their particular needs:

Synchronizable Passkeys

Synchronizable Passkeys use an existing mobile phone to protect the private key used in the authentication process.

Able to communicate over the FIDO protocol built into multiple devices and web browsers, the phone simply acts as the user's security token and the user accesses the protected private key using fingerprint, face ID or a PIN, delivering secure, passwordless authentication with a simple user experience.

Synch-able passkeys can be backed up and restored using the mobile operating system's built in mechanisms, for example iCloud. This effectively deals with lost or replacement devices without having to reissue credentials.

Device Bound Passkeys

Device Bound Passkeys are useful for organizations that want higher levels of security and control over where passkeys are. MyID MFA also supports device-bound passkeys such as those stored on a USB authenticator, for example YubiKey. Device-bound passkeys never leave the device, resulting in the highest levels of phishing resistance.

MyID MFA supports the innovative YubiKey Bio device, which enables users to replace a PIN with a simple match of a fingerprint, delivering a seamless authentication experience while maintaining the highest level of security.



Technology	Knowledge	Possession	Inherent
Password (NIST)	Х		
Grid Authentication	Х	х	Х
Phrase Authentication	Х	Х	
One Time Code	Х	Х	Х
Push		Х	Х
Standard OATH		Х	
YubiKey OTP	Х	Х	
Passkey/FIDO2		Х	X

3.8 Authentication Technology against Factor type

3.9 Automatic MFA determination and SSO assurance levels

MyID MFA allows for users to be provisioned for multiple MFA technologies at once. Applications Logon Technology can be set to **Automatic** MFA; this determines the most appropriate technology that the user is capable of authenticating with.

Coupled to this, MyID MFA also provides Single Sign On (SSO) capabilities across applications. This means that a user can authenticate to one application and is then not required to re-authenticate to other applications.

As each application can be configured with its own MFA assurance level, users can authenticate to an application with a lower-level assurance level than another application.

MyID MFA provides conditional SSO where SSO is allowed, provided that the application being accessed has the same or lower assurance level than the application a user originally authenticated to, the user is not required to re-authenticate. If an application has a higher-level of assurance than the original authenticated to, then the user needs to re-authenticate to the application with the higher-level assurance MFA technology.

3.9.1 Hierarchy

This is the MyID MFA automatic logon technology and assurance levels hierarchy:

- 1. FIDO / Passkey
- 2. Grid Multi-Factor Authentication
- 3. Push
- 4. YubiKey One Time PIN
- 5. One Time Code
- 6. Phrase Multi-Factor Authentication
- 7. Grid Deviceless
- 8. Phrase Deviceless
- 9. AD Password (Not applicable to Realm users)



3.10 Federation server

Federation provides the ability to share identity and authentication information between systems in a managed way. By supporting standards-based protocols such as OpenID Connect and SAML, MyID MFA can easily add stronger authentication to a range of applications be they cloud based or on-premises.

By supporting the widest range of authentication options from OTP over SMS, through pass phrases, OTP generation using the MyID Authenticator app, push-notifications, and FIDO passkeys, you can introduce a single means of strong authentication to project multiple applications or mix and match technologies as best fits your security needs and deployment scenario.

Building Identity Provider capabilities into the MFA solution, not only supports federation, but also delivers a unified authentication experience across the entire application suite, including authentication to application, logging on to the windows desktop, accessing the self-service portal and resetting credentials such as passwords. A simplified and consistent authentication process improves the user experiences and reduces the likelihood of a call to the help desk.

3.10.1 ADFS replacement

Microsoft ADFS (Active Directory Federation Services) has been the mainstay of many organizations looking to add secure authentication to multiple applications in a Microsoft-centric environment. With the move to Microsoft Entra based solutions, a number of organizations are finding themselves looking for an alternative that is simpler to deploy and provides support for both cloud and legacy on-premises applications, as well as securing the Windows Desktop logon and Microsoft 365.

The federated Identity Provider (IdP) capabilities MyID MFA delivers provides a modern and easy to alternative to ADFS. By supporting a wide range of authenticators, including FIDO passkeys, and standard protocols such as OpenID Connect and SAML 2.0, MyID MFA is a natural successor to ADFS.



4 Deployment

The following deployment overview walks through the installation process for deploying a MyID Authentication Server.

To deploy a MyID Authentication Server fully, you must:

- 1. Install the MyID Authentication Server on a Windows Server.
- 2. Provision users in the MyID Directory.
- Install the Plug-ins, configure the third-party integrations, or setup RADIUS clients. MyID plug-ins have separate Integration guides which should be followed.
- 4. Create applications for Federated App support.
- 5. Optionally, you may choose to deploy additional MyID Authentication Servers to provide High Availability.


4.1 High Availability and certificates

The MyID Authentication Server installer automatically generates a MyID Server Certificate – this is used for encrypting data sorted in the directory. In addition, the installer creates a MyID SSL Certificate that is used by IIS for encrypting web traffic in transit.

Before you install an additional MyID Authentication Server, you must export the MyID Server Certificate from the primary MyID Authentication Server with its private key and import it onto the additional server. Until you do this, the additional Authentication Server cannot access encrypted data stored in the directory.

To verify which certificate is being used on an existing Authentication Server and Identity Provider Signing certificates, check the **Certificates** tab in the MyID Management Console:

MyID PSM 8	ι MFA Pro	pertie	5				\times
Grid Options	Phrase	One	Time Code	Yı	ıbiKey OTP	Auther	nticator App
General R	ADIUS A	lerts	Remediati	on	Schedule	Grid Pa	attern Policy
Certificates	SMTP De	ivery	SMS Delive	ery	Licence	FIDO2	MyID CMS
Authentic	ation Serve	r Certi	ficate				
Name:	Authlogics	s Serve	er Cert (CN=	*.au	thlogicsdem	o.com)	
Certifica	ate Informat	ion			[Chan	ge
Identity P	rovider Sigr	ning Ce	ertificate				
Name:	Authlogics	s IdP S	igning Cert	(CN:	=*.authlogic	sdemo.c	om)
Certifica	ate Informat	ion			[Brows	e
Clien	t Trusted R	oot Ce	rtificate				
Name:	DigiCert (CN=Di	giCert Assur	ed I	D Root CA,	OU=ww	w.digic
Certifica	ate Informat	ion			[Brows	e
External	Access Sec	urity					
∑ Do	not require	Truste	d Client Cert	ifica	te		
		[OK		Cance	I	Apply

For detailed instructions, see section 4.7, Certificate export and import.



4.2 Installing the MyID Authentication Server

The MyID Authentication Server is responsible for processing logon requests and other core activities. The MyID Authentication Server should be set up before any other MyID MFA or PSM component.

Note: This section of the installation process requires Local Administrator rights on the server. Domain rights are not required at this stage.

- 1. To start the MyID Authentication Server installation, run the MyID Authentication Server xxxxx.exe installer.
- 2. Click Next to automatically uninstall the previous version.

MyID Authentication Server	- InstallAware Wizard	_		×
	Welcome to the Installation Authentication Server	Wizard	for My]	D
	The Installation Wizard will install MyIC on your computer.) Authentic	ation Ser	ver
MyiD				
	WARNING: This program is protected international treaties.	by copyrig	ht law and	ł
	To continue, dick Next.			
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> e	xt >	Can	cel



4. Review the license agreement and check the **I accept the terms of the licence agreement** box.

🧿 MyID Authentication Server - InstallAware Wizard	_		\times
Licence Agreement Please carefully read the following licence agreement.			lyiD
			^
Important			
END USER LICENCE AGREEMENT			
THE USE OF ALL INTERCEDE SOFTWARE PROVIDED VIA AUTHLO TO THIS END USER LICENCE AGREEMENT (THE AGREEMENT).	DGICS	IS SUBJE	ст
PLEASE READ THIS AGREEMENT CAREFULLY BEFORE INSTALLI DOWNLOADING, COPYING OR OTHERWISE USING THE SOFTWA	NG, RE.		
If you are viewing this agreement in connection with a downloa	d onli	no or on a	~
✓ I accept the terms of the licence agreement			
Intercede			
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ex	t >	Can	cel

🧿 MyID Authentica	tion Server - InstallAware Wizard —		Х
Setup Type Choose the set	up type that is best for your needs.	M	yiD
Please select a	setup type.		
○ <u>C</u> omplete	All program features will be installed. This option requires the most disk space.		
⊖ C <u>o</u> mpact	Program will be installed with minimum required features. This may disable some application functionality.		
Custom Cus	Choose which program features you want installed. Recommended for advanced users.		
Intercede	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Canc	el



6. Select the **Custom** setup type, and click **Next**.

MyID Authentication Server - InstallAware Wizard	– 🗆 X
Custom Setup Choose the program features you would like to install.	MyiD
Click on an icon in the list below to change how a feature is inst Authentication Server Reporting Dashboard Offline Password Breach Database (Top 1 Milli	talled. Feature Description The MyID Authentication Server is responsible for processing logon requests, password changes and other core activities.
< >>	Required: 215,713 KB Remaining: 151,347 MB
Intercede	Next > Cancel

7. Select features to install.

At minimum, select the **Authentication Server core** and the **Authentication Server Management Console** features for installation.

MyID Authentication Serve	er - InstallAware Wizard	_		×
	Completing the Installation V Authentication Server	Vizard	for MyI	D
MyiD	The Installation Wizard is now ready to Authentication Server on this computer - Click Next to begin configurat - Click Back to change settings - Click Cancel to exit	o configur r. tion	e MyID	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ex	(t >	Can	cel



9. Click Next.

The installation is being performed.

🧿 MylD Aut	hentication Server - InstallAware Wizard	_		×
Installing The pro	J MyID Authentication Server gram features you selected are being configured.		Myi	D
Q	Please wait while the Installation Wizard installs MyII Server. This may take several minutes.	O Authenticat	ion	
	Status: 2CF.bin, 34% complete			
Intercede —	< <u>B</u> ack !	<u>N</u> ext >	Cancel	

10. You may be prompted to overwrite the existing NPS policy.

MyID Au	uthentication Server - InstallAware Wizard
1	RADIUS Server
	The Windows Network Policy Server is already installed on this server. Do you wish to BACKUP and OVERWRITE the existing policy configuration with the default MyID Authentication Server policy?
	<u>Y</u> es <u>N</u> o





Click Yes.

OMUD Authentication Server	r - InstallAware Wizard — 🗌 🗙
	Completing the Installation Wizard for MyID Authentication Server
MyiD	You have successfully completed the Installation Wizard for MyID Authentication Server.
	Run the Directory Configuration Wizard now
	To close this wizard, click Finish.
	< <u>B</u> ack Finish Cancel

All necessary MyID Authentication Server files have been installed on your server.

- 11. If you want to set up your directory immediately, select **Run the Directory Configuration Wizard now**.
- 12. Click Finish.

4.3 Uninstalling the MyID Authentication Server

If you no longer require the MyID Authentication Server on a server, you can remove it by performing an uninstall from **Control Panel > Programs > Programs and Features**:

-> -> 🕆 🖬 > Control P	anel > Programs > Programs and Features					・ ひ Search Program	ns and Feature	s ,
Control Panel Home	Uninstall or change a program							
View installed updates	To uninstall a program, select it from the list and then	click Uninstall, Change, or Repa	air.					
Turn Windows features on or								
off	Organize Uninstall Change						REE 👻	
Install a program from the	Name	Publisher	~	Installed On	Size	Version		
network	Microsoft Lync Server 2013, Bootstrapper Prerequisite	Microsoft Corporation		02/01/2020	188 MB	5 0 8308 0		
	Microsoft Server Sneech Platform Runtime (v64)	Microsoft Corporation		02/01/2020	6 69 MB	11.0 7400 345		
	Microsoft Server Speech Recognition Language - TEL	Microsoft Corporation		02/01/2020	29.5 MB	11.0.7400.345		
	Microsoft Server Speech Text to Speech Voice (en-US	Microsoft Corporation		02/01/2020	22.3 MB	11.0.7400.345		
	Microsoft Speech Platform VXML Runtime (x64)	Microsoft Corporation		02/01/2020	1.34 MB	11.0.7400.345		
	Microsoft Unified Communications Managed API 4.0	Microsoft Corporation		02/01/2020	88.0 KB	5.0.8308.0		
	Microsoft Visual C++ 2010 x64 Redistributable - 10.0	Microsoft Corporation		03/03/2022	13.8 MB	10.0.40219		
	Hicrosoft Visual C++ 2012 Redistributable (x64) - 11.0	Microsoft Corporation		02/01/2020	20.4 MB	11.0.50727.1		
	Microsoft Visual C++ 2013 Redistributable (x64) - 12.0	Microsoft Corporation		02/01/2020	20.5 MB	12.0.30501.0		
	Microsoft Visual C++ 2015-2022 Redistributable (x64)	Microsoft Corporation		18/01/2024	20.6 MB	14.36.32532.0		
	Hicrosoft Visual C++ 2015-2022 Redistributable (x86)	Microsoft Corporation		24/11/2023	17.6 MB	14.32.31326.0		
	Kicrosoft Visual Studio Code (User)	Microsoft Corporation		16/01/2024	343 MB	1.80.1		
	闄 Microsoft Windows Desktop Runtime - 6.0.25 (x64)	Microsoft Corporation		18/01/2024	210 MB	6.0.25.33020		
	📇 MyDefrag v4.3.1	J.C. Kessels		02/01/2020	4.77 MB	4.0.0.0		
	MyID Authentication Server	Intercede		18/01/2024		5.0.1000.0		
	Postman x86_64 10.20.0	Postman		28/11/2023	123 MB	10.20.0		
	VMware Tools	VMware, Inc.		24/11/2023	96.7 MB	12.1.5.20735119		



4.3.1 Active Directory metadata

Uninstalling the MyID Authentication Server does *not* remove the metadata from user accounts in the Active Directory. If you want to remove MyID MFA and PSM from your environment completely, delete all user accounts using the MMC before uninstalling. This does *not* delete the user accounts in the Active Directory; it just removes all MyID information from them.

For detailed information about MyID Active Directory metadata, see Authlogics KB207256965:

support.authlogics.com/hc/en-us/articles/207256965

4.4 Updates and upgrades

A product update is a minor new version designed to fix specific known issues in the product and introduce some new features. Updates are typically low risk to deploy and are designed to be a simple in-place update. Updates are released regularly and may be skipped if the changes in the update are not required. Check the readme.txt of the update to see the changelog.

Typically, updates can be performed in-place at your convenience allowing for differing versions for MyID Agents and Authentication servers operational within your environment.

For example, if you currently have V5.0.6947.0 deployed, an in-place update of all agents and servers to V5.0.6947.2 can be done sporadically in any order that fits your schedule.

Note: When updating or upgrading servers, you are recommended to perform the action one server at a time to update or upgrade additional servers only once the server you are currently performing update or upgrade action on is completed and fully tested to be operational.

A product upgrade is a major new version that includes fixes but is mainly designed to deliver new features and functionality. Upgrades are not released regularly. Upgrades may require additional planning before they are installed. For more information, see section *4.6*, *Installing an upgrade*. Always review the installation and configuration guide of the new version before upgrading.



4.5 Installing an update

You can use the installation program of an update for a full clean install, or to perform an inplace update of an existing installation.

The installation process is almost identical to performing a new installation. Once installed, you must run the Directory Configuration Wizard for the server to be used after the update.

For PSM deployments, you must rerun the Password Security Management wizard after an upgrade.

All directory settings, registry settings, and supported web portal customizations are retained during an update.

Note: If the latest version of MyID MFA and PSM is an upgrade to your current version, see section *4.5*, *Installing an update*.

To perform an in-place update:

1. To start the MyID Authentication Server installation, run the MyID Authentication Server xxxxx.exe installer.

O MyID Authentication Server - InstallAware Wizard -	_		\times
Application Requirements The following requirements must be processed before starting setup.			lyiD
Previous Version Uninstallation			
To continue, click Next.			
Intercede 		Can	cel





2. Click **Next** to automatically uninstall the previous version.



- 3. Click Next.
- 4. Review the license agreement and check the **I accept the terms of the licence agreement** box.

MyID Authentication Server - InstallAware Wizard -	_		Х
Licence Agreement Please carefully read the following licence agreement.		My	/iD
			^
Important			
END USER LICENCE AGREEMENT			
THE USE OF ALL INTERCEDE SOFTWARE PROVIDED VIA AUTHLOGI TO THIS END USER LICENCE AGREEMENT (THE AGREEMENT).	CSIS	SUBJEC	r
PLEASE READ THIS AGREEMENT CAREFULLY BEFORE INSTALLING, DOWNLOADING, COPYING OR OTHERWISE USING THE SOFTWARE.			
If you are viewing this agreement in connection with a download of	nlino	05 00 9	¥
$\begin{tabular}{ll} \hline \end{tabular}$ I accept the terms of the licence agreement			
Intercede			
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >		Cance	1



5. Click Next.

0	MyID Authenticat	tion Server - InstallAware Wizard —		Х
	Setup Type Choose the setu	p type that is best for your needs.	My	/iD
	Please select a	setup type.		
	() <u>C</u> omplete	All program features will be installed. This option requires the most disk space.		
	⊖ C <u>o</u> mpact	Program will be installed with minimum required features. This may disable some application functionality.		
) Cu <u>s</u> tom	Choose which program features you want installed. Recommended for advanced users.		
Inte	rcede ———	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cance	ł

6. Select the **Custom** setup type, and click **Next**.

MyID Authentication Server - InstallAware Wizard	– 🗆 X
Custom Setup Choose the program features you would like to install.	MyiD
Click on an icon in the list below to change how a feature is inst Authentication Server Reporting Dashboard Offline Password Breach Database (Top 1 Milli	talled. Feature Description The MyID Authentication Server is responsible for processing logon requests, password changes and other core activities.
	Required: 215,713 KB Remaining: 151,347 MB
Intercede < <u>B</u> ack	Next > Cancel

7. Select features to install.

At minimum, select the **Authentication Server core** and the **Authentication Server Management Console** features for installation.



8. Click Next.



9. Click Next.

The installation is being performed.

🧿 MyID Authe	entication Server - InstallAware Wizard —	×
Installing N The progra	MyID Authentication Server am features you selected are being configured.	MyiD
Q	Please wait while the Installation Wizard installs MyID Authentication Server. This may take several minutes.	
	Status: 2CF.bin, 34% complete	
Intercede ——		
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel





10. You are prompted to overwrite the existing NPS policy.





🧿 MyID Authentication Serv	ver - InstallAware Wizard — 🗆 🗙			
Completing the Installation Wizard for MyID Authentication Server				
MyiD	You have successfully completed the Installation Wizard for MyID Authentication Server.			
	Run the Directory Configuration Wizard now			
	To close this wizard, click Finish.			
	< <u>B</u> ack Finish Cancel			

All necessary MyID Authentication Server files have been installed on your server.

- 11. If you want to set up your directory immediately, select **Run the Directory Configuration Wizard now**.
- 12. Click Finish.

4.6 Installing an upgrade

To perform an Upgrade successfully (for example upgrading V4.1.xxxx.x deployments to V4.2.xxxx.x or V4.2.xxxx.x to V5.0.xxxx.x) without potentially impacting your environment, you must follow a step-by step process.

All MyID agents are designed to be backward compatible – a V5.x agent can communicate with a V4.2 Authentication Server; however, a V4.2 agent cannot communicate with a V5.0 Authentication server. Therefore, before you upgrade Authentication Servers, you must first upgrade the deployed agents.

Agents may have new Group Policy objects so, before deploying the new agent, you may need to push the Group Policy objects accordingly.



Once you have fully upgraded the agents, you can upgrade the Authentication servers.

Fully test each step of the recommended upgrade process before moving on to the next step. The recommended upgrade process is:

- 1. Push any new MyID MFA and PSM agent Group Policy Objects (GPO) to the servers and workstations where the agents are installed.
 - For more information on the Group Policy Objects relating to the Windows Desktop Agent, see the *Configuring the Windows Desktop Agent* section of the *Windows Desktop Agent Integration Guide*.
 - For more information on the Group Policy Objects relating to the Domain Controller Agent, see the Configuring the Domain Controller Agent Policy settings section of the Domain Controller Agent Integration Guide.
 - For more information on the Group Policy Objects relating to the ADFS Agent, see the Configuring the MyID ADFS Agent section of the ADFS Agent Integration Guide.
 - For more information on the Group Policy Objects relating to the Exchange Agent, see the *Configuring the Exchange Agent* section of the *Exchange Agent Integration Guide*.
- 2. Upgrade all MyID PSM and MFA agents.
 - For information on upgrading the Windows Desktop Agent, see the Updating the MyID Windows Desktop Agent section of the Windows Desktop Agent Integration Guide.
 - For information on upgrading the Domain Controller Agent, see the *Installing the MyID Domain Controller Agent* section of the *Domain Controller Agent Integration Guide*.
 - For information on upgrading the ADFS Agent, see the *Installing the MyID ADFS Agent* section of the *ADFS Agent Integration Guide*.
 - For information on upgrading the Exchange Agent, see the *Installing the MyID Exchange Agent* section of the *Exchange Agent Integration Guide*.

Ensure that the agents are all reading the GPOs that you configured and that they can communicate with the existing Authentication Servers.

3. Manually uninstall all but one Authentication Server.

You must ensure that you have only *one* Authentication Server remaining in your Active Directory forest.

4. Perform an in-place upgrade on the last remaining Authentication Server.

Ensure that the Internet Information Server Port bindings are the same as before, and that any NPS clients are not overwritten.

Performing an in-place upgrade of one Authentication Server has the same steps as performing an in-place update of one Authentication Server; see section *4.5*, *Installing an update*.

- 5. After performing the in-place upgrade:
 - a. Run the Directory Configuration wizard with **Reprocess user data to latest storage version** enabled.

MyID Authentication Server Installation and Configuration Guide



- b. Reboot.
- c. If you are performing a PSM upgrade, run the Password Security Management wizard.
- d. Use the on-server Self Service Portal to test the upgraded server. You are recommended to:
 - Test that you can log in with pre-existing MFA users.
 - Test that passwords that are valid according to PSM defined policies are accepted.
 - Test that passwords that are invalid according to PSM defined policies are rejected.
- 6. Install the latest Authentication Server version on the Authentication servers that you uninstalled.

Before installing additional MyID Authentication servers, see section 4.7, Certificate export and import.

After installing each in-place upgrade, carry out the previous step (performing the inplace upgrade) on each machine.

7. Review the MyID Authentication Server settings.

Note the new features, and browse the documentation for more information on them.

4.6.1 Upgrading from version 4.2

The MyID Authentication Server 5.0 supports upgrading from version 4.0 and higher. To upgrade from version 3.x, you must first upgrade to version 4.1 (not version 4.2), and then to version 5.0; there is no direct upgrade path.

Important: If the Authlogics Desktop Logon Agent version 4.x is deployed, you *must* upgrade the Windows Desktop Agent to version 5.0 *before* you upgrade the MyID Authentication Server . The Windows Desktop Agent 5.0 is backward compatible with version 4.x Authentication servers. See the *Windows Desktop Agent Integration Guide* for further details.

4.6.2 Windows Desktop Agent compatibility

All Windows Desktop Agents are designed to be backward compatible; the latest version of the Desktop Agent works with the previous MyID Authentication Server version. However, the agent may not work with more recent MyID Authentication Server versions.

The following table details the MyID Authentication Server relative to the versions of Windows Desktop Agent supported:

MyID Authentication Server version	Minimum Desktop Agent version
5.0.6946.0 and lower	5.0.6946.0
5.0.6947.0	5.0.6947.0

When a Windows Desktop Agent falls out of compatibility, the agent can no longer communicate with the Authentication Server and therefore continues to operate in offline mode.



4.7 Certificate export and import

This section details the process of exporting the MyID Authentication Server directory encryption and Identity Provider certificates to a file so it can be imported onto another server where the MyID Authentication Server software will be installed.

4.7.1 Exporting a certificate from an existing MyID Authentication Server

Note: The following documents the process to export the directory encryption certificate; this process must be repeated for the IdP Signing certificate.

1. To start the Certificate MMC, run certlm.msc.

🖀 certlm - [Certificates - Local Con	nputer\Personal\Certificates]				-		×
<u>File Action View H</u> elp							
🗢 🔿 🖄 📰 🔏 🖦 🗙 🛛							
Certificates - Local Computer Certificates Trusted Root Certification Au Enterprise Trust	Issued To authlogicsdemo.com authlogicsdemo.com Microsoft Exchange Server Aut	Issued By ".authlogicsdemo.com ".authlogicsdemo.com Microsoft Exchange Server Auth C	Expiration Date 26/11/2025 26/11/2025 06/12/2024	Intended Purposes Server Authenticati Server Authenticati Server Authenticati	Friendly Name Authlogics Server Cert Authlogics SSL Cert Microsoft Exchange Serve	er Auth Cer	tificate
Intermediate Certification Au Trusted Publishers Untrusted Certificates Trusted Parby Root Certificate Trusted People Client Authentication Issuers Preview Build Roots Test Roots Certificate Enrollment Requee Smart Card Trusted Roots Trusted Devices Web Hosting Windows Live ID Token Issuer	Tajserver	server WMSvc-SHA2-SERVER	02/01/2025	Server Authenticati	Microsoft Exchange WMSVC-SHA2		
< >	<						>
Personal store contains 5 certificates.	rsonal store contains 5 certificates.						



2. Right-click the MyID Server Certificate (or IdP Signing Certificate) being used, and select All Tasks > Export.

Issued To	Issued By			Expiration Date	Intended Pur	poses	Friendly Name
authlogicsdemo.com	*.authlogicsdemo	n.com		26/11/2025	Server Authe	nticati	Authlogics Server Cert
勾*.authlogicsdemo.com GMicrosoft Exchange Server A Gserver	Open All Tasks	om >	Open	26/11/2025	Server Authe	nticati ticati ticati	Authlogics SSL Cert Microsoft Exchange Serv Microsoft Exchange
WMSvc-SHA2-SERVER	Cut Copy		Request Co Renew Cer	ertificate with New tificate with New K	Key ey	ticati	WMSVC-SHA2
	Properties		Manage Pi Advanced	rivate Keys Operations	>		
	Help		Export				
 Ecrificate Export N Welcome to This wizard helps you lists from a certificat A certificate, which and contains inform connections. A cert 	Wizard the Certificates, te store to your disl is issued by a certif ation used to prote ificate store is the s	, certif k. ficatior ct dat	Export V ficate trust I n authority, ra or to esta n area where	Vizard ists and certificat is a confirmation blish secure netw e certificates are	e revocation of your identif ork kept.	ty	
To continue, dick N	ext.						
				<u>N</u> e	d Ca	ancel]



		×
- <i>Ş</i>	Certificate Export Wizard	
Ex	sport Private Key	
	You can choose to export the private key with the certificate.	
	Private keys are password protected. If you want to export the private key with the certificate, you must type a password on a later page.	
	Do you want to export the private key with the certificate?	
	• Yes, export the private key	
	\bigcirc No, do not export the private key	
	<u>N</u> ext Cance	1



4. Select Yes, export the private key and click Next.

Export File Format Certificates can be exported in a variety of file formats.	
Select the format you want to use:	
◯ <u>D</u> ER encoded binary X.509 (.CER)	
Base-64 encoded X.509 (.CER)	
○ Cryptographic Message Syntax Standard - PKCS #7 Certificates (.P7B)	
Include all certificates in the certification path if possible	
Personal Information Exchange - PKCS #12 (.PFX)	
\checkmark Include all certificates in the certification path if possible	
\Box Delete the private <u>k</u> ey if the export is successful	
Export all extended properties	
Enable certificate privacy	
Microsoft Serialized Certificate Store (.SST)	





6. Select **Password** and enter your password twice to confirm.

		×
\leftarrow	🐓 Certificate Export Wizard	
	Security To maintain security, you must protect the private ke	y to a security principal or by
	<u>G</u> roup or user names (recommended)	
		<u>A</u> dd
		<u>R</u> emove
	Password:	7
	•••••	
	<u>C</u> onfirm password:	7
	•••••	
	Encryption: TripleDES-SHA1 ~	
		<u>N</u> ext Cancel





8. Enter allocation and **File name** to export to.

	×
🗧 🌮 Certificate Export Wizard	
File to Expert	
Specify the name of the file you want to export	
Ele name:	
C:\Users\Administrator\Desktop\Authlogics Cert Export.pfx Browse	
Next	ancel



9. Click Next.

÷	Ş.	Certificate Export Wizard		×
		Completing the Certificate Exp	port Wizard	
		You have successfully completed the Certificate	Export wizard.	
		You have specified the following settings:		
		File Name	C:\Users\Administrator\Desktop\Authle	
		Export Keys	Yes	
		Include all certificates in the certification path	Yes	
		File Format	Personal Information Exchange (*.pfx)	
		<	>	
			<u>F</u> inish Canc	el

10. Click Finish.



11. Click OK.

The wizard closes.



4.7.2 Import a certificate to a new MyID Authentication Server

Note: As with the export of the certificates, this process needs to be followed for both the Authenticate Server encryption and IdP Signing certificates.

1. To start the Certificate MMC, run certlm.msc.

🚡 certIm - [Certificates - Local Computer\Personal\Certificates] - 🗆 X								
Eile Action View Help								
🗢 🔿 🙋 📅 🖌 🖻 🗙 🗟								
Certificates - Local Computer	Issued To	Issued By Microsoft Exchange Server Auth C server	Expiration Date 06/12/2024 02/01/2025	Intended Purposes Server Authenticati Server Authenticati	Friendly Name Microsoft Exchange So Microsoft Exchange	erver Aut	h Cert	ificate
Induster Notic Certification Au Intermediate Certification Au Intermediate Certification Au Intermediate Certificates Intrusted Certificates Trusted Certificates Intrid-Party Root Certification Client Authentication Issuers Preview Build Roots	😭 WMSvc-SHA2-SERVER	WMSvc-SHA2-SERVER	30/12/2029	Server Authenticati	WMSVC-SHA2			
Test Roots Certificate Enrollment Reque Smart Card Trusted Roots Trusted Devices Web Hosting Windows Live ID Token Issue	٢							>
Personal store contains 3 certificates.								





2. Right-click Certificates in the Personal store, select All Tasks > Import.







4. Enter the path to the file you previously exported.

		×
~	🝜 Certificate Import Wizard	
	File to Import	
	Specify the file you want to import.	
	<u>F</u> ile name:	
	C:\Users\Administrator\Desktop\Authlogics Cert Export.pfx Browse	
	Note: More than one certificate can be stored in a single file in the following formats:	
	Personal Information Exchange- PKCS #12 (.PFX,.P12)	
	Cryptographic Message Syntax Standard-PKCS #7 Certificates (.P7B)	
	Microsoft Serialized Certificate Store (.SST)	
	<u>N</u> ext Cance	el l





6. Enter the password that you used when exporting the certificate.

Pr	rivate key protection To maintain security, the private key was protected with a password.
	Type the password for the private key.
	Password:
	-
	Import options:
	Enable strong private key protection. You will be prompted every time the private key is used by an application if you enable this option.
	Mark this key as exportable. This will allow you to back up or transport your keys at a later time.
	Protect private key using virtualized-based security(Non-exportable)
	Include all extended properties.



←	🐖 Certificate Import Wizard	×
	Certificate Store Certificate stores are system areas where certificates are kept.	
	Windows can automatically select a certificate store, or you can specify a location for the certificate.	
	 Automatically select the certificate store based on the type of certificate Place all certificates in the following store 	
	Certificate store:	
	Personal Browse	
	<u>N</u> ext Canc	el



8. Click Next.

Completing the Certificate Import Wizard	
The certificate will be imported after you click Finish.	
You have specified the following settings:	
Certificate Store Selected by User Personal	
Content PFX	
File Name C:\Users\Administrator\Desktop\Authlogics Cert I	Expo
<	>
Finish	Cancel

9. Click Finish.



10. Click **OK**.



4.8 MyID Authentication Server Directory configuration

MyID Authentication Server Directory must be configured before you can provision users for Multi-Factor Authentication or password policies created.

4.8.1 Directory Configuration Wizard

This section should be performed on the server running the MyID Authentication Server.

Note: This section of the installation process requires the logged-on user to have Domain Admin rights in the domain containing MyID Users and the domain containing the Authentication Server. Alternatively, an Enterprise Admin account can be used.

1. Start the MyID Directory Configuration Wizard.

The MyID Directory Configuration Wizard starts automatically when the MyID Management Console is first loaded. It can also be started from the **Directory Configuration Wizard** action from the **Actions** of the MMC.

Start the MyID Management Console from the Windows Start menu:

Start > All Programs > MyID Authentication Server Management Console

Note: Ensure that you are logged on with domain administrator account and not a local administrator account.





- 3. If the Active Directory Forest contains more than one domain and this is the first time the directory is being configured:
 - a. Select the Active Directory Domain you want to use to store MyID configuration data.

O Directory Configuration Wizard	×
Primary MyID Domain Choose the Primary MyID Domain.	
Select an Active Directory Domain which will be configuration data. Active Directory Domains authlogicsdemo.com child.authlogicsdemo.com	e used to store MyID Authentication Server
	< Back Next > Cancel

O Directory Configuration Wizard	×
Directory Connection Verification Verify the connectivity to the specified Directory service.	
	^
<u>I</u> est Connection	
< <u>B</u> ack	Next > Cancel



4. Click the Test Connection button.

This ensures that the MyID Authentication Server can access the specified directory.

O Directory Configuration Wizard	×
Directory Connection Verification Verify the connectivity to the specified Directory service.	
 Establishing connection 2 Domains found. Done. MyID primary domain: authlogicsdemo.com Reading Global Settings Not found. The directory will be configured for first use. Checking rights in directory Done. Test Completed 	~
– Sack Next >	Cancel

5. If the test is successful and all the necessary information has been collected, click **Next**, otherwise correct the issue, and try again.

O Directory Configuration Wizard	×
Apply the configuration? Are you ready to apply the directory settings?	
The Directory Configuration Wizard has gathered all the information required to configure MyID Authentication Server for use with a directory service.	
Click Next to apply the configuration changes.	
Reprocess user data to latest storage version	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > C	ancel

6. Click the **Reprocess user data to latest storage version** to upgrade the user information from a version 4 schema to the latest schema. For clean installations or native MyID version 5 deployment, this is not necessary.



7. Click Next.

This applies any configuration changes.



8. Click OK.

Important: After configuring the MyID Authentication server for use with Active Directory you *must* reboot the server – if you do not authentication services fail. These failures are reflected in the Windows Events – Application logs.

O Directory Configuration Wizard	×
Directory configuration MyID Authentication Server is being updated with the settings.	
Update Progress	
 Saving Initialise settings Done. Committing settings to the directory Done. Creating AD Password Reset OTC storage Done. Creating IdP Grant storage Done. Looking for domains and realms 2 Domains found. Checking hash database for domain authlogicsdemo.com Skipped. Checking hash database for domain child.authlogicsdemo.com Skipped. Storage version: 10 The Directory Configuration Wizard is complete. 	~
< <u>B</u> ack <u>F</u> inish	Cancel

9. Examine the update progress information for any unexpected errors that may have occurred during the AD configuration.

This information is also logged in the Windows Application Event Log with Information Event ID 1719.

10. Click Finish.

4.8.2 Add users to the MyID Administrators Group

The MyID Directory Configuration wizard automatically adds the currently logged in user account to the MyID Administrators Active Directory security group. User accounts for the administrators of MyID must also be *manually* added to the MyID Administrators Active Directory security group.



4.9 MyID license configuration

The License Configuration Wizard is responsible for adding all license types to the Authentication Server.

Intercede supplies a unique license key for each product (PSM and MFA) specific to each Active Directory. The license key is entered in the Licence Configuration Wizard through the MMC. The license requires product activation, and the server periodically updates Intercede with license usage information - this requires Internet connectivity to

https://licencing.authlogics.com/* which must be maintained for the server to continue functioning.

In certain circumstances, Intercede may supply an offline license file. These digitally signed license files do not require product activation or any Internet connectivity. You must not modify or tamper with them – if you do, they are rendered inoperable. For more information contact Intercede Support.

4.9.1 Getting a free 10 user license or a 30-day trial license

Intercede provides a free MFA and PSM license for up to ten users. The free license does not include our standard product support and assistance and Intercede provides only email assistance on a best-effort basis. However, access to our knowledge base and community site is freely available, see:

support.authlogics.com

If you require additional users in the future, we can easily upgrade your existing license.

To test the MyID Authentication Server before you buy, you can get a free 30-day trial at any time, and when you decide MyID is for you we can update your license to a full one when you purchase, no reinstall is required.

A free or trial license is installed instantly so you can evaluate at your own pace, however, it does require Internet connectivity (HTTPS) to be installed and activated. If Internet connectivity is not available on the authentication server, please contact Intercede Support.





To obtain a license:

1. Start the Licence Wizard.

The Licence Wizard starts automatically when the MyID Management Console is first loaded. You can also start the wizard by clicking **Licence Wizard**, under **Actions** in the MMC.





- 3. Select Get a free 10 user license or Get a 30-day trial license.
- 4. Click Next.





5. Complete your details.

📀 Licence Wizard	×
30 day trial licence 30 day trial Licence regist	tration details.
Please provide valid compa Note: All fields must be com	ny information as it will be included in the issued licence. pleted to continue.
Contact Name:	John Doe
Company:	Acme Inc
Email Address:	john.doe@acme.inc
Tel Number:	555-1234
Number of Users:	1000
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel

6. Click Next.

O Licence Wizard	×
Product Selection Choose which product licences to install	Zo
Select all the products which you are would like a licence for and the Licence Wiz register your details and install a licence for each one.	zard will
Available Products: Multi-Factor Authentication Password Security Management	
< <u>B</u> ack Next >	Cancel

7. Select the product or products that you would like the licenses for.



8. Click Next.

📀 Licence Wizard	×
Licence configuration Licence Wizard is requesting a licence.	Ż
Update Progress	
Processing online licences	^
Registering MFA licence Done. MFA Licence Key: 0e2c082	
Done.	
- Licence details Product Name: Multi-Factor Authentication	
Company Name: Intercede - Test Environment Number of Users: 100	~
< <u>B</u> ack <u>F</u> inish	Cancel

The licenses are requested over the internet and are activated.

9. Click Finish.



4.9.2 Importing an offline license file

An offline license file may be issued by Intercede in certain circumstances. Please contact Intercede Support for eligibility. These licenses *do not* require Internet connectivity or activation.

If you have multiple license files, you must add them one at a time. Run the Licence Wizard again to add the second license file.

To import an offline license, you must use the Licence Wizard.

1. Start the Licence Wizard.

The Licence Wizard starts automatically when the MyID Management Console is first loaded. You can also start the wizard by clicking **Licence Wizard**, under **Actions** in the MMC.

📀 Licence Wizard	×
12 Ins	Welcome to the Licence Wizard
	This Wizard will allow you to easily request, upgrade, install and activate a MyID product licence. Each licence type provides full product functionality although they may be time limited.
a chift	To continue, click Next.


2. Click Next.

O Licence Wizard	×
Licence type Apply an existing licence, request a free or trial licence.	
A licence can be requested over the Internet and installed immedi an offline licence file or enter your licence key.	ately. You can also import
◯ Get a free 10 user licence	
◯ Get a 30 day trial licence	
 Import licence file(s) 	Browse
C Licence Key	
Enter your licence key (including dashes):	
< <u>B</u> ack	Next > Cancel

3. Select Import licence file(s), and click Browse.

📀 Import Licence File									×
← → ~ ↑	This	PC > Local Disk (C:) > Licences				~ Ö	Search Licences		P
Organize 👻 New	folder						== •		?
- Oriek anner		Name	Date modified	Туре	Size				
Desisten		Authlogics Dev - Multi-Factor Authentic	09/12/2019 10:55	LIC File	2 KB				
Downloads	*	Authlogics Dev - Password Security Man	09/12/2019 10:56	LIC File	2 KB				
Documents	*								
Pictures	*								
System32									
💻 This PC									
🧊 3D Objects									
Desktop									
Documents									
🕹 Downloads									
Music									
E Pictures									
Videos									
Local Disk (C:)									
🥏 Network									
F	ile <u>n</u> ar	me: Authlogics Dev - Multi-Factor Authentication	n.lic			~	Licence Files	ancel	~





4. Select one or more of your license files (ending in . LIC) and click **Open**.

🧿 Licence Wizar	d			×
Licence type Apply an exis	ting licence, request a free or tria	al licence.		Şe
A licence can b an offline licenc	e requested over the Internet an e file or enter your licence key.	d installed immedi	iately. You can a	lso import
	⊖ Get a free 10 user licence			
	⊖ Get a 30 day trial licence			
	Import licence file(s)		Browse	
	C Licence Key			
	Enter your licence key (includi	ng dashes):		
		< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

5. Click Next.

The license or licenses are installed, and activation is skipped.

6. Click Finish.



4.9.3 Entering an existing license key

A license key is issued by Intercede at the point of purchase. License keys *do* require Internet connectivity for installation, activation, and ongoing license reporting metrics. No private or confidential information is reported back to Intercede.

If you have multiple license keys, you must add them one at a time. Run the wizard again to add the second license key.

1. Start the Licence Wizard.

The Licence Wizard starts automatically when the MyID Management Console is first loaded. You can also start the wizard by clicking **Licence Wizard**, under **Actions** in the MMC.

O Licence Wizard	×
Ins	Welcome to the Licence Wizard
	This Wizard will allow you to easily request, upgrade, install and activate a MyID product licence. Each licence type provides full product functionality although they may be time limited.
Thirt	To continue, click Next.
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel

2. Click Next.





3. Select Licence Key and enter the license key that Intercede sent you.

O Licence Wizard	×
Licence type Apply an existing licence, request a free or trial licence.	Z
A licence can be requested over the Internet and installed immediately. You can a an offline licence file or enter your licence key.	ilso import
◯ Get a free 10 user licence	
◯ Get a 30 day trial licence	
O Import licence file(s)	
Licence Key	
Enter your licence key (including dashes):	
QSXNA-GXKZN-MUHI2-VPRLR-3XJ07M	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

4. Click Next.

Licence Wizard	Х
Licence configuration Licence Wizard is requesting a licence.	Ż
Update Progress	
Processing online licences Reading licence file C:\Licences\Authlogics Demo VM - MFA (Online).lic Done Licence details Product Name: Multi-Factor Authentication Company Name: Authlogics Demo VM Number of Users: 1500 Licence Key: QSXNA-	^
	~
< <u>B</u> ack <u>F</u> inish	Cancel

The license is installed and activated.

5. Click Finish.



4.10 MyID Password Security Management Wizard

The Password Security Management Wizard (PSM) is responsible for configuring domains in the Active Directory Forest for real-time and retrospective protection against known breached and shared passwords, as well as dormant accounts. This includes:

- Analyzing existing password hashes in AD.
- · Setting a remediation protection schedule.
- · Setting the account remediation policy.
- Setting the alerting actions and recipients.

Retrospective Protection: The MyID Authentication Server is responsible for doing all retrospective protection, remediation, and alerting work required by the schedule.

Real-Time Protection: The MyID Authentication Server works in conjunction with the MyID Domain Controller Agent (DCA) to provide real-time protection of Active Directory passwords. The Domain Controller Agent intercepts password changes at the Domain Controller as they happen and queries the MyID Authentication Server to check if the password should be accepted.

Note: A PSM Password Policy must be configured, enabled, and applied through Group Policy to the Domain Controllers as well as the MyID Authentication Servers for the policy to take effect. For more information, see section 7.1, *Configuring the MyID Password Policy settings*.

The MyID Authentication Server requires Internet access to query the MyID Password Breach Database in the Cloud.

A fully offline copy of the MyID Password Breach Database can be installed on the MyID Authentication Server; you can download this from:

www.intercede.com/support/downloads



4.10.1 Starting the Password Security Management Wizard

1. Start the Password Security Management Wizard.

You can start the Password Security Management Wizard by clicking **Password Security Management Wizard**, under **Actions** in the MMC.



2. Click Next.

📀 Password S	ecurity Management Wizard X
Breached A Configure	nd Shared Password Protected AD Domains AD Domains For use With Password Security Management.
Password Se Directory Bre configured Fo will Not be Pr	curity Management provides real-time And retrospective protection Of Active ached And Shared Password per Domain. Selected AD domains will be or use With Breached And Shared Password protection And unselected domains otected. Enabled on Active Directory Domains
	< Back Next > Cancel

3. Select the domain or domains that you want to enable MyID PSM password protection on.



4. Click Next.

Password Security Management Wizard	×
Remediation And Alerting Processing Schedule Configure When scheduled Remediation And Alert sending should run.	Ś
Scheduled user account scans For breached And Shared passwords are important For maintaining the security Of passwords As they could become compromised after they have been changed.	
Remediation and Alerting Schedule Schedule start: 18 January 2024 Repeat cycle: Daily Recur every: 1 day	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Canc	el

The MyID Authentication Server provides the ability to run Password Security Management remediation and alerting on a scheduled basis.

5. Select the Schedule start date and time.

This is when you want to schedule to start.

- 6. Select the Repeat cycle and recurrence cycle. The available options are:
 - Run Once
 - Hourly
 - Daily
 - Weekly
 - Monthly



7. Click Next.

O Password Security Management Wizard	×
PSM Remediation And Alert Actions Choose the action To take When a specific	: password issue Is found.
When a password scan finds a breached Or S automatically updated To reduce its risk. Alerts people regarding the action taken.	hared password, the account status can be can be sent via email To one Or more relevant
Breached Password Found Set account status to:	Shared Password Found Set account status to:
No change Send alert notification email to: Administrators Manager	No change Send alert notification email to: Administrators Manager
User	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel

8. Select what you want to happen when breached or shared passwords are found.

Password Security Management can alert Administrators, Managers or Users for newly detected breached or shared passwords.

PSM also includes auto-remediation functionality where accounts can be disabled or users can be forced to change their password at next logon for breached or shared passwords.

You must set the account status for detected breached passwords and shared passwords to one of the following:

- No change.
- Must change password at next logon.
- Account is disabled.

You can also select who receives an alert about the breached or shared password.

- · Administrators.
- Managers.
- Users.



9. Click Next.

O Password Security Management Wizard	×
Dormant Account Remediation And Alert Choose the action To take When a specific	t Actions account issue Is found.
When an account scan finds a dormant accour updated to reduce its risk. Alerts can be sent vi regarding the action taken.	nt, the account status can be automatically a email to one Or more relevant people
Domant AD Account Found	Dormant MFA Account Found
Set account status to:	Set account status to:
No change ~	No change ~
Send alert notification email to:	Send alert notification email to:
Administrators	Administrators
	User
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel

10. Select what happens when dormant Active Directory or MFA accounts are found.

Password Security Management can alert Administrators, Managers or Users for newly detected dormant Active Directory or MFA accounts.

PSM also includes auto-remediation functionality that can disable accounts or force users to change their password at their next logon for breached or shared passwords.

You must set the account status for detected dormant Active Directory or MFA accounts to one of the following:

- No change.
- Must change password at next logon.
- · Account is disabled.

You can also select who receives an alert about the detected dormant Active Directory or MFA accounts.

- Administrators.
- Managers.
- Users.



11. Click Next.

O Password Se	ecurity Management Wizard X
Password Se Select an o	pptional group of user accounts who will use PSM.
Provide Pass IS NOT speci Note: Each P	word Security Management protection to members of the group only. If a group fied then all enabled user accounts in the AD Forest will be protected. SM user requires a PSM licence.
	Password Security Management Users Enable Password Security Management Users group AUTHLOGICSDEMO\PSM Users Browse
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel

To limit which users can use PSM (and therefore require a license), select **Enable Password Security Management Users group** and then click **Browse** to select an Active Directory Group containing the user accounts to include.

12. Click Next.

Password Se	curity Management Wizard X
Remediation Select an o	and Alerts Exclusion ptional group of user accounts to exclude from remediation and alerts.
Remediation a real-time passu useful for Serv	and Alerts will not be actioned on members of the specified group, however, word policy checks will still apply when a password is changed. This can be ice Accounts.
	Remediation and Alerts Exclusion
	Enable Remediation and Alerts Exclusion group
	Browse
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel



13. Click Next.

Password Security Management is configured.

Password Security Management Wizard	×
Password Security Management Wizard Password Security Management Wizard is being updated with the settings.	
Update Progress	
- Configuring Password Security Management - Enabling PSM on Domain: authlogicsdemo.com Re-enabled. - Processing user data in Active Directory (may take a few minutes) Done. - Saving settings Done. The Password Security Management Wizard is complete.	~
	Ŷ
< <u>B</u> ack <u>F</u>inish	Cancel

14. Click Finish.



4.11 YubiKey OTP Configuration Wizard

The YubiKey OTP Configuration Wizard is responsible for managing reprogrammed YubiKey tokens; this means that YubiKey OTPs are processed by the MyID Authentication Server and that access to the Internet-based YubiKey servers is *not* required for validation.

If you want to validate YubiKey OTPs using the Internet-based YubiKey servers for tokens that have not been reprogrammed, the MyID Authentication Server still requires Internet access.

For information on how to reprogram YubiKey tokens and create a YubiKey Personalization CSV file, see the *Configuring YubiKey devices* section of the **YubiKey Reprogramming Guide**.

4.11.1 Starting the YubiKey OTP Configuration Wizard

1. Start the YubiKey OTP Configuration Wizard.

You can start the YubiKey OTP Configuration Wizard by clicking **YubiKey OTP Configuration Wizard**, under **Actions** in the MMC.





2. Click Next.

YubiKey OTP Configuration Wizard X X
YubiKey OTP Settings Configure the basic settings for YubiKey OTP.
Choose the preferred settings to use for YubiKey OTP for the system. These settings can be changed later via the YubiKey OTP settings tab.
Enable YubiKey OTP
Enable Yubico Online Authentication
Require PIN / AD Password
Minimum PIN Length: 4 🖨 digits
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel

3. Configure YubiKey OTP options.

Select **Enable Yubico Online Authentication** to send YubiKey OTPs to Yubico's servers to verify the validity of the YubiKey token.

Choose if you want the user to require knowledge as well as the YubiKey when logging in. Knowledge adds a factor to the authentication. For the knowledge, the user's Active Directory password can be used instead of a PIN, or the user can select a PIN. Alternatively, a PIN can be automatically generated, or not required at all for OTP-only validation. To require knowledge, select the **Require PIN / AD Password** option.

If you have enabled knowledge, choose the Minimum PIN Length.



4. Click Next.

Add or Remove OTP YubiKeys Import YubiKey OTP data or remove all existing data.
Select to import new data from the YubiKey Personalization Tool into MyID or remove all existing data. Existing YubiKey OTP entries will be updated with the new data if a duplicate is found.
O Do Not Change Personalization Tool data
Import YubiKey Personalization Tool data
O Remove existing YubiKey Personalization Tool data
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel

5. Select Import YubiKey Personalization Tool data.

6. Click Next.

(V) YubiKey OTP Configuration Wizard		×
Add YubiKeys Import YubiKey Personalization Tool data file.		Z
Select the output CSV file created by the YubiKe duplicate entries exist in the CSV file only the last	ey Personalization Tool to be importe t entry will be stored.	ed.lf
YubiKey Personalization Tool CSV file pa	ath: <u>B</u> rowse	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel





7. Click Browse and select the YubiKey Personalization Tool generated CSV file.

YubiKey OTP Configuration Wizard	×
Add YubiKeys Import YubiKey Personalization Tool data file.	Ż
Select the output CSV file created by the YubiKey Personalization Tool to be imported. If duplicate entries exist in the CSV file only the last entry will be stored.	
YubiKey Personalization Tool CSV file path:	
Browse	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > C	ancel

8. Click Next.

(V) YubiKey OTP Configuration Wizard	×
Apply the configuration? Are you ready to apply the settings?	Ż
The YubiKey OTP Configuration Wizard has gathered all the information required to the YubiKey OTP data.	o configure
Click Next to apply the configuration changes.	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel



9. Click Next.

(V) YubiKey OTP Configuration Wizard	×
YubiKey OTP configuration Authentication Server is updating YubiKey OTP data.	Z
Update Progress	
Updating YubiKey OTP settings Done Loading YubiKey OTP database Not Found Creating YubiKey OTP database Done Reading data from CSV file Done 1 YubiKey entries found in CSV import file. Importing YubiKey cccdccbufjvc slot 1 Done	^
	~
< <u>B</u> ack <u>F</u> inish	Cancel

The configuration is applied and the YubiKey database is imported.

10. Click Finish.



5

Administering the MyID Authentication Server

The MyID Management Console provides administrators with the ability to configure MyID settings and administer users. Functionality and options may differ depending on the product license installed.

O MylD Management Console		-	
<u> </u>	leip		- 8 ×
🗢 🏟 🙍 📰 🗟 🔢 📰			
MyID PSM & MFA Domains Millianter authlogicsdemo.com S Authlogics Servers Millianter authlogics Servers	authlogicsdemo.com Top level Containers in the Active Directory domain authlogicsdemo.com authlogics Servers Builtin Company Groups Company Users	Actions authlogicsdemo.com • OUs / Containers All Users	•
	Mangad Service Accounts Wincooff Exchange Security Groups Users	Search for User Accounts Add User Account View New Window from Here	•
Realms Applications External Identities Reles Administrators		Refresh Export List Help	
Administrators Administrators Administrators AADIUS Users PSM Users PSM Exclusion			
< >>			

The MyID Management Console provides Administrators with the ability to manage the following:

- Directory Configuration
- MyID Global Settings
- MyID Users in Domains or Realms
- · Applications
- External Identities
- User Roles

5.1

MyID Management Console views

The MyID Management Console displays both the MFA and PSM users.

PSM only users.

MFA only users.

The MyID Management Console is suited to small deployments and also scales to very large Active Directory environments. This is achieved by utilizing the **OUs / Containers** and the **All Users** view for Active Directory Domains, and a Realms view for External users.

The Active Directory view can be chosen by selecting the domain and toggling between the two options.



5.1.1 OUs / Containers view

The OUs / Containers view is the default view that allows the Active Directory OU structure to be traversed. You can search for user accounts from the domain level or an OU or Container. All users in an OU tree can be found for by searching for the wildcard "*".

O MyID Management Console						- 🗆 🗙
File Action View Window H	Help					- 7 ×
 MyD Management Console File Action Yew Window L File Action Yew Window L MyD PSM & MFA MyD PSM & MFA Multiplicstema com Myd Authogics Servers Myd Authogics Servers Myd Company Groups Company Groups <	deb Cermany All User Acc Account Name i alimicha i alimicha i aliackiesel i	ounts in container Germ First Name Aili Ailia Aliza Al	any Last Name Micha Coley Kisel Kazi Lanese Bleak Rountree Plattner Corney Miskelly Occon Rhoe Deitoro Vesella Rabock Moesch Norcott Grabowski Hannes Miko	Description	Actions Germany Search for User Accounts Refresh Users Mad User Account View New Window from Here Refresh Eport Litt Image: Heip	
< >>	4					

5.1.2 All Users view

The **All Users** view is a single view that lists all users for the entire domain. Since all users are loaded for the domain at once this view may be slower to load on large domains.

O MyID Management Console						- 🗆 ×
<u> <u> </u> </u>	lelp					_ 8 ×
🗢 🔿 🙍 📰 🗟 🖬						
NyID PSM & MFA	authlogicsdemo.com	II Authlogics User Acc	counts in container authlogicsd	emo.com	Actions	
V Domains	Account Name	First Name	Last Name	Description	authlogicsdemo.com	
 mauthlogicsdemo.com 	& adda.dimario	Adda	Dimario		OUs / Containers	
> Authlogics servers	addie.hintz	Addie	Hintz		All Ulreers	
> Company Groups	adele.starzynski	Adele	Starzynski		All Osels	
Company Users	adelind.demyan	Adelind	Demyan		Search for User Accounts	
> 🗊 England	🌡 adelle.kilbury	Adelle	Kilbury		🥭 Refresh Users	
> 🖆 France	& Administrator			Built-in account for administering the	🚨 Add User Account	
Germany	adriaens.wrynn	Adriaens	Wrynn		View	•
> i Ireland	adrianna.canclini	Adrianna	Canclini		New Window from Here	
> italy	aili.micha	Aili	Micha		New Window from Here	
Spain	ainsley.coley	Ainsley	Coley		Q Refresh	
> 🖬 Wales	aliza.kiesei	Aliza	Kiesei		Export List	
> 🗊 Zimbabwe	aliys.kazi	Allys	Nazi Lapere		Help	
> Managed Service Account	ame threats	Ame	Threats			
> 🚊 Microsoft Exchange Secur	& amitie bleak	Amitie	Bleak			
> 🔛 Users	& austin.rountree	Austin	Rountree			
uu Kealms	ababette.plattner	Babette	Plattner			
Applications Applications	& belinda.coomey	Belinda	Coomey			
× & Roles	& bobbe.miskelly	Bobbe	Miskelly			
> 📫 Administrators	alley.ocon	Calley	Ocon			
> iii Operators	arin.rhoe	Carin	Rhoe			
> ADIUS Users	arlina.deltoro	Carlina	Deltoro			
> 🧾 PSM Users	ariye.vessella	Carlye	Vessella			
> PSM Exclusion	aryn.rabeck	Caryn	Rabeck			
	atlee.moesch	Catlee	Moesch			
	a catriona.norcott	Catriona	Norcott			
	Charis.grabowski	Charis	Grabowski			
	Cherintel mike	Christel	manners			
	2	Cimaca	miky	, v		
]]	



5.1.3 Updating PSM users

PSM users are automatically added to the MyID Management Console when the user interacts with MyID using either an Active Directory password change or a Self-service portal login. These users can be made into MFA users (provided a valid MFA license exists) by running the **User Account Update** user action.

1. Start the User Account Update Wizard.

You can start the User Account Update Wizard for a user from the MMC by clicking on a user and then clicking **User Account Update**, under their username in **Actions**.

O MyID Management Console					-	\Box ×
<u> </u>	lelp					- 8 ×
🗢 🏟 🙍 📰 🗟 🖬						
MyID PSM & MFA	authlogicsdemo.com	All Authlogics User Acc	ounts in container authlogics	demo.com	Actions	
✓ Domains ✓ authogicsdemo.com authogicsdemo.com authogics Servers Builtin Company Groups Company Groups Company Vers Gingland France Germany Iveland Ray Social 	Account Name addie.hintz adele.starzynski adele.kibury Adelik.kibury Administrator adelik.kibury adelik.	First Name Addie Adele Adele Adelle Adriaens Adrianna Aili Ainsley Aliza	Last Name Hintz Starzynski Demyan Kilbury Wrynn Canclini Micha Coley Kiesel	Description ^	Authogicsdemo.com OUs / Containers All Users Search for User Accounts Refresh Users Add User Account View New Window from Here Refresh	,
> 🗟 Spain > 🗟 Wales > 🗟 Zimbabwe > 🔂 Managed Service Account	allys, kazi aloysia. lanese ame. threats amitie. bleak	Allys Aloysia Ame Amitie	Kazi Lanese Threats Bleak		Export List	
 > ■ Microsoft Exchange Secur > ■ Users Applications → External Identities > ■ Administrators > ■ Operators > ■ Operators > ■ PSM Exclusion 	autin.rountree babette.plattner belinda.commy bobbe.miskelly calley.ocon carin.ebe carina.detoro carine.vessella carp.rabeck catien.mesch cations.norcott cherin.hanners c	Austin Babette Belinda Bobbe Calley Carlina Carlina Carlye Carlye Carlye Carlye Catlee Cationa Charins Cherin Chrintel Eda	Rountree Plattner Coomey Miskelly Ocon Rhoe Deltoro Vessella Rabeck Moesch Norcott Grabowski Hanners Miko Delirie		Send SMS User Account Update User Account Update Properties Help	
< >	<			>		





2. Click Next.

O User Acc	count Managemer	nt Wizard				×
Account Genera	Options al options for the sele	ected user acc	ounts.			8
The acco this wizard	unt options specified 1.	d here will appl	y to the use	r accounts	selected when r	unning
	Account options					
	Account is d	lisabled		Mobile pl	hone private	
	Valid from:	19 January	2024		Always	
	Valid to:	19 January	2024		🗹 Always	
			< <u>B</u>	ack	<u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

3. Set the **Account options**.

Account options determine the user's initial state. You can give accounts start and end validity dates and create them as disabled accounts for later use. You can also specify the mobile phone privacy setting.



4. Click Next.

🧿 User Account Management Wizard	×
Passwordless Authentication Passwordless authentication options for the selected user accounts.	
The Passwordless authentication options specified here will apply to the user accounts selected when running this wizard.	
Enable FIDO Passkey Authentication Enable Push Authentication Action Require Remetric Seed in Authenticator App	
	O CE
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Ca	ancel

Choose if you want to:

- Enable FIDO Passkey Authentication.
- Enable Push Authentication.
- Require Biometric Seed in Authenticator App.

This option makes the user required to provide valid biometrics when accessing the Authenticator App.

5. Click Next.



6. If you chose to **Enable FIDO Passkey Authentication** for this user, the FIDO instruction letter can be emailed to the user.

🧿 User Account Management Wizard	×
FIDO usage instruction email FIDO usage instructions can be emaild to the user using an HTML template.	8
Don't output user details Email user details Send to Email Addresses: eda.delisle@authlogicsdemo.com Use Secondary Email Address if available Email HTML Template Path: C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\Fidk Browse	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > 0	Cancel

If a secondary email address is configured, the email can be sent to the alternate address.

- 7. Click Next.
- 8. If you chose to **Enable Push Authentication** for this user, a PUSH instruction letter can be emailed to the user.

O User Account Management Wizard	×
Push usage instruction email Push usage instructions can be emailed to the user using an HTML template.	2
 Don't output user details Email user details Send to Email Addresses: eda.delisle@authlogicsdemo.com Use Secondary Email Address if available Email HTML Template Path: C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\Pus 	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

If a secondary email address is configured, the email can be sent to the alternate address.



9. Click Next.

📀 User Account Management Wizard	×
Apply the configuration? Are you ready to apply the user account changes to the directory?	8
The User Account Update Wizard has gathered all the information required to configure th user accounts.	e
Click Next to apply the configuration changes.	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Ca	ncel

10. Click Next.

This applies the configuration changes.

📀 User Account Management Wizard	×
Directory update The directory is being updated with the new user account details.	8
Update Progress	
- Updating user account "eda.delisle" Sending email to "eda.delisle@authlogicsdemo.com" Sent.	^
Sending email to "eda.delisle@authlogicsdemo.com"	
	~
< <u>B</u> ack <u>F</u> inish	Cancel

The user account is updated.

11. Click Finish.



5.2 Global settings walkthrough

The MyID global settings are a group of directory configuration options that apply to *all* MyID servers in the forest; they are not per-user settings.

To access the global settings:

1. In the MyID Management Console, highlight the high-level **MyID** node. The name of this node includes the product name of the installed licenses.

For example, it may be called **MyID PSM & MFA**.

MyID Management Console							-	\Box ×
Sile Action View Window	Help							- 8 ×
(=								
NyID PSM & MFA	MyID PSM &	MFA Conr	ected to Active	Directory			Actions	
V Domains		61 61		1.	G 2		MyID PSM & MFA	
> m autniogicsdemo.com		TT	4	U	~		Pirectory Configuration Wizard	
Applications	Domains	Realms	Applications	Identities	Koles		R Password Security Management Wizard	
External Identities							🔄 Server Certificate Wizard	
> Administrators							YubiKey OTP Configuration Wizard	
> 🛗 Operators							🔄 Licence Wizard	
> C RADIUS Users							View	•
> PSM Exclusion							New Window from Here	
							🗟 Export List	
							Properties	
							Help	

2. Click Properties, in the Actions pane.

This opens the global MyID Properties dialog.

You can access the following tabs in the Properties dialog:

- General tab
- RADIUS tab
- · Alerts tab
- Remediation tab
- · Schedule tab
- · SMTP Delivery tab
- SMS Delivery tab
- Licence tab
- Authenticator App tab
- Certificates tab
- Grid Pattern Policy tab
- · Grid Options tab
- Phrase tab



- One Time Code tab
- YubiKey OTP tab
- FIDO2 tab
- MyID CMS tab



5.2.1 General tab

The General tab contains the **Account Lockout Policy**, **Multi-Factor Factor Timing**, and **Temporary Access** options.

MyID MFA Properties	×
Grid Options Phrase One Time Code Yubi	Key OTP Authenticator App
General RADIUS Alerts Remediation S	Chedule Grid Pattern Policy
Account Lockout Policy	
Account lockout duration:	2 🚖 minutes
Account lockout threshold:	10 attempts
Reset account lockout counter after:	1 🖨 minutes
Multi Eactor Timina	
Multi-ractor filming	2 A minuton
Real-Time Token Litespan:	15 minutes
Temporary Access Codes	
Allow Temporary Access Codes	
Maximum usage time permitted:	24 🔶 hours
Maximum number of uses:	3 🚖 logons
ОК	Cancel Apply

The Account Lockout Policy settings take effect when a user logs on incorrectly after the amount of invalid logon attempts specified in the Account lockout threshold setting within the lockout counter period. The lockout counter period is set the Reset lockout counter after setting. Accounts that are attempted to be logged onto in an invalid manner that many times are locked out for the Account lockout duration.

Allowed soft token time delta allows you to configure how many minutes difference are allowed between the clock of a two-factor device compared to the clock of the MyID server.

Real-time Token Lifespan allows you to configure how many minutes after being provided that a Real-Time token can be used for before it expires. After this period has exceeded, the token can no longer be used.

Temporary access codes are a feature that allows a user to log in with a temporary PIN or password in an emergency or as a first usage code. The user is provided with a PIN or password and the usage of the password is limited by time, or by the number of uses. Unlike a standard password, the temporary access code or password is self-managed and expires automatically.

The default time limit for temporary access code is 24 hours and three logons. Once these limits are reached, or the user logs on using Multi-Factor Authentication and the temporary access requirements have ended, the user's temporary access is automatically removed.



5.2.2 RADIUS tab

The RADIUS tab allows you to configure RADIUS options that are not available within Microsoft NPS.

MyID PSM & MFA Properties X
Grid Options Phrase One Time Code YubiKey OTP Authenticator App
Certificates SMTP Delivery SMS Delivery Licence FIDO2 MyID CMS
General RADIUS Alerts Remediation Schedule Grid Pattern Policy
RADIUS Options Open Network Policy Server Enable Mobile Push
Require AD password before Mobile Push
Disable Deviceless Logons
Enabled 2-Step Logons (Password + OTP via Access-Challenge)
Maximum time between steps: 60 🚖 seconds
Enable RADIUS extensions
Return AD password to support passwordless logons
Reply-Message (18) for use with Access-Challenge:
MyID
Enable RADIUS Access Control
Browse
OK Cancel Apply



MyID RADIUS supports Mobile Push authentication over RADIUS; this can be enabled or disabled as required.

If you want a Push to be sent after a password has been successfully verified only, **Enable Require AD password Before Mobile Push**. This is performed in a single RADIUS request. When disabled, a Push is sent to the user with only a username being received over RADIUS.

If you enable the **Disable Deviceless Logons** option, users are prevented from using Grid Pattern and Phrase OTPs generated in deviceless mode and are forced to use a two-factor generated OTP for RADIUS connections.

A two-step logon process can be configured using the RADIUS Access-Challenge attribute by setting the **Enable 2-Step Logons** option.

In the first step, the user validates their username and Active Directory password; if they are successful an Access-Challenge is returned to the RADIUS client. In the second step, the user validates their username and an OTP; if they are successful, an Access-Accept is returned to the RADIUS client.

Step 1: If the Active Directory password is valid, then the Access-Challenge is returned, which tells the RADIUS client to request an OTP. If the Active Directory password is invalid, then an Access-Reject is returned.

Step 2: If the OTP is received within the allowed time (60 seconds by default) and it is valid, an Access-Accept is returned. If the OTP is invalid another Access-Challenge is returned to prompt the RADIUS client to request a new OTP. An Access-Reject is returned for any OTP received after the allowed time.

You can enable RADIUS extensions to send additional metadata about the user to the RADIUS client. Additionally, the user's password can be returned to the RADIUS client to support Single Sign-On (for example, on Citrix Access Gateways). The password is returned as clear text over RADIUS, however, it is encrypted in transit using the RADIUS shared secret. Returning the password requires the MyID Password Vault to be enabled on the Active Directory tab.

An optional RADIUS access control group can be configured on this tab, or through the Roles section of the MMC UI. This provides a level of access control over which users are allowed to use RADIUS authentication. Users who are not a member of the specified group fail the RADIUS logon request.



5.2.3 Alerts tab

The Alerts tab allows you to configure multiple alerting options based on the type of event and the recipient.

MyID PSM & MFA Properties				×
Grid Options Phrase One Time Code Yubi Certificates SMTP Delivery SMS Delivery I	Key OTP Licence	Authe FIDO2	MyID CM	p IS
Active Directory Password Alerts Breached password found:	Admin		Manager	ÿ
Shared password found: Password expires within 10 days:				
	Admin	User	Manager	
AD account dormant for 120 🚔 days:	\checkmark			
MFA account domant for 110 🚔 days:	\checkmark			
MFA account locked out:	\checkmark	\checkmark	\checkmark	
MFA device change on user account:	\checkmark	\checkmark		
Licence events:				
ОК	Cancel		Apply	

Note: Alerts are sent through SMTP and cannot be configured unless an SMTP server is configured first. The options available are dependent on what license types are installed and which PSM policies are configured.

Administrators receive a summary email instead of individual emails for each user whenever possible. Administrator emails are sent to the email address of all the accounts in the Authlogics Administrators role, if any.

If **Manager** is selected, an alert is sent to the email address of the user account specified as the **Manager** for the user account within Active Directory. If no manager has been specified, then the alert is not sent.



5.2.4 Remediation tab

The Remediation tab allows you to configure an automatic resolution based on the type of condition found.

MyID PSM & MFA Properties ×
Grid Options Phrase One Time Code YubiKey OTP Authenticator App Certificates SMTP Delivery SMS Delivery Licence FIDO2 MyID CMS General RADIUS Alerts Remediation Schedule Grid Pattern Policy
PSM Remediation Action Dormant AD Account: No change if account not used within 120 + days
Breached Password: No change Shared Password: No change
Enable PSM Remediation and Alerts Exclusion group Browse
MFA Remediation Action Domant MFA Account: No change if account not used within 110 days
OK Cancel Apply

Remediation provides an automated way to fix common user account issues to prevent security breaches. Automating these fixes is important as they are time-sensitive and often overlooked by manual processes.

If an account is found that has a breached or shared password, or is dormant, then the account can be set to:

- No change the default. You are initially recommended to leave this and analyze the administrator alerts before you enable remediation to allow you to assess the impact of enabling it.
- **Must change at next logon** once you have analyzed the impact of remediation, you are recommended to set this for accounts with breached or shared passwords.
- Account is disabled once you have analyzed the impact of remediation, you are recommended to set this for dormant accounts and dormant MFA accounts.



5.2.5 Schedule tab

The Schedule tab allows you to configure when breached and shared password remediation and alerting takes place.

MyID PSM & MFA Properties X
Grid Options Phrase One Time Code YubiKey OTP Authenticator App
Certificates SMTP Delivery SMS Delivery Licence FIDO2 MyID CMS
General RADIUS Alerts Remediation Schedule Grid Pattern Policy
Remediation and Alerting Schedule
Enable Schedule
Schedule start: 20 January 2024
Repeat cycle: Daily ~
Recur every: 1 day
Next run: 01:00:00 20 January 2024
Note: Password expiry alerting as well as alerting and remediation for domant accounts will always run daily at midnight and not based on this schedule.
Alerts for MFA account lockouts and device changes are triggered in real-time, not based on this schedule.
Start PSM Wizard Run Now
OK Cancel Apply

It is recommended to run the schedule daily and out of hours; however, this can be customized as required. The processing work is only performed on the primary MyID Server.

To run a check as soon as possible without waiting for the schedule click **Run Now**. This will begin the process within the next 15 minutes.

Note: Password expiry alerting and alerting and remediation for dormant accounts always runs daily at midnight and not based on this schedule. Also, alerts for MFA account lockouts and device changes are triggered in real-time, not based on this schedule.



5.2.6 SMTP Delivery tab

When you provision users using the MyID Management Console, they can be sent an email with details of how to access the Self Service Portal, their initial pattern, PINs, and other necessary logon information. Alerts are also sent to administrators using email. The SMTP Delivery tab allows administrators to set the SMTP host and port for the email server for email message delivery.

MyID PSM & MFA Prope	ties			×			
Grid Options Phrase O	ne Time Code	YubiKey OTP	Authe	nticator App			
General RADIUS Alert	s Remediatio	n Schedule	Grid P	attern Policy			
Certificates SMTP Delive	sMS Delive	ery Licence	FIDO2	MyID CMS			
Email delivery options							
From address:	administrator@a	authlogicsdemo	.com				
SMTP server 1:	server.authlogic	sdemo.com	25	-			
SMTP server 2:	server2.authlog	icsdemo.com	587	-			
Use SSL/TLS End	cryption	Se	end <u>T</u> est	Email			
Email authentication op	tions						
O Anonymous (N	lo authentication)					
O Windows Integ	grated (Compute	r account crede	entials)				
Specify Creder	ntials:						
Username: authlogicsdemo\administrator							
Password: •••••							
	OK	Cance	1	Apply			

The From address setting specifies the email address that delivered mail is received from.

Note: Ensure that the **From** address can deliver emails to users through any anti-spam filters.

A primary SMTP must be specified to send an email. A secondary SMTP may be specified for redundancy purposes. The secondary server is only used if the sending fails when using the primary server. Enter the **SMTP server 1** and **SMTP server 2** DNS names or IP addresses and corresponding port numbers. If the servers require an encrypted connection, enable the **Use SSL/TLS Encryption** option.

If your email server requires authentication, select either **Use default Integrated credentials** or **Specify Credentials** and provide a username and password of an account with credentials to authenticate to the email server. These credentials are stored with 256bit AES asymmetric encryption.





To ensure that the SMTP details are valid:

- 1. Click Send Test Email.
- 2. Enter a test email.



3. Click OK.



A confirmation that the message has been sent is displayed is the send was successful; if the test email is not sent correctly, an error stating the SMTP issue is displayed.



5.2.7 SMS Delivery tab

The SMS Delivery tab allows administrators to set the SMS/Text delivery providers for SMS/Text message delivery and the **Message options**. MyID can use SMS messages for delivery of two-factor tokens to mobile devices that do not have soft-tokens.

The administrator can also send notification or broadcast messages to one or many users through the MMC by right-clicking an account and selecting the **Send SMS** option.

MyID PSM & MFA Properties X				
Grid Options Phrase One Time Code YubiKey OTP Authenticator App General RADIUS Alerts Remediation Schedule Grid Pattern Policy Certificates SMTP Delivery SMS Delivery Licence FIDO2 MyID CMS				
SMS / Text delivery provider				
Provider: Disabled Veb Site				
Usemame: AQL				
Password:				
Use SSL/TLS Encryption Send Test SMS				
Message Options				
☑ Overwrite previous message ☑ Enable SMS Flash				
From Info: SMS IN				
Retry Send Limit: 6				
Default Country Code: Zimbabwe (+263)				
OK Cancel Apply				

The **Provider** list is preconfigured with some commonly used Internet-based SMS providers from around the globe. If you do not have an account with an SMS provider, you can choose one from the list and click the **Web site** link; this takes you to the provider's sign up page where you typically sign up for a free trial account.

Select your SMS provider and enter the Username and Password details for it.



To ensure that the SMS provider credentials are valid:

- 1. Click Send Test SMS.
- 2. Enter a test mobile number.

SMS Test	×
Enter the phone number to send the test SMS message to:	OK
	Cancel
+1-555-1234	

3. Click OK.

If you receive a text message on the specified mobile device, then the provider details are correct.

Some providers allow SMS messages from the same source to overwrite previous SMS messages. To allow this, enable **Select Overwrite previous message**. For SMS messages to be delivered as a Flash SMS, select **Enable SMS Flash**.

The **From Info** setting specifies the number that all messages appear to be delivered from.

The **Retry Send Limit** setting prevents more than the specified number of text messages to be delivered to a specific user per hour.

The **Default Country Code** prefixes mobile phone numbers with the selected dialing code for all mobile numbers that do not have an international dialing code.



5.2.8 Licence tab

The Licence tab displays the loaded license information.

MyID PSM & MFA Prope	erties		×		
Grid Options Phrase (General RADIUS Aler Certificates SMTP Deliv	One Time Code rts Remediatio rery SMS Delive	YubiKey OTP n Schedule ry Licence	Authenticator App Grid Pattern Policy FIDO2 MyID CMS		
Licence Information					
Product:	Password Security Management 🗸				
Licence Key:	SSHOLVERSUPERCETY/Chekkenger				
Company Name:	Authlogics Demo VM				
Expiry Date:	Never				
Activation Status:	Activated OK				
Usage Reported:	19 January 2024	ļ.			
Remove		[Update		
Licence Usage					
Licence Quantity:	1600	I I	Refresh		
Licences Used:	1006				
	ОК	Cancel	Apply		

Details of the selected license are displayed for your information, including the number of licenses supported and the dates during which they are valid. Details of your Multi-Factor Authentication and Password Security Management licenses can be viewed and modified by selecting the **Product** from the drop-down list.

You can remove licenses by selecting the **Product** that the license is for, and clicking the **Remove** button. If you have removed a license, the Remove button is replaced by the **Add** button. If you click the **Add** button, the Licence Configuration Wizard starts.

The license is automatically refreshed periodically but *must* be updated at least every 60 days. If your license details change, for example if you renew your subscription or purchase more user license, or you want to manually update the usage reporting, click the **Update** button to get the latest license version from Intercede.

The number of used licenses is updated periodically; however, you can update it as needed by clicking the **Refresh** button.


5.2.9 Authenticator App tab

The Authenticator App tab allows you to customize the appearance and functionality of the MyID Authenticator app that is installed on mobile devices from popular App Stores.

MyID PSM & MFA	MyID PSM & MFA Properties X							
FIDO2 MyID CM General RADIU Grid Options Ph	IS Certificates S S Alerts Reme rase One Time C	SMTP Delivery ediation Sche ode YubiKey	SMS Delivery edule Grid Pa OTP Authen	ttem Policy				
Cloud Connect Cloud Locati Custom DNS	ion Point (Push & S on: United Kin Host:	ìync) Igdom		~				
In-App Options Use Biom Enable O	etrics ne Time Passcode ransaction Validatio	copy & paste						
Custom Brandi Logo URL: Logo Descrip	ng http://myc otion: MyCompar	ompany.com/lo זע	ogo/png					
	0	ОК	Cancel	Apply				

To allow the Authenticator App to perform an online pairing and Mobile Push authentication, select a **Cloud Location** region. Once you have registered a mobile device, you cannot change this value unless you remove all devices.

Note: The **Cloud Location** option replaces the **Enable Online Device access** option. On a clean installation, or during an upgrade from an installation with **Enable Online Device access** enabled, the **Cloud Location** is set to **United Kingdom**. During an upgrade from an installation with **Enable Online Device access** disabled, the **Cloud Location** is set to **None**.

To host your own instance of the web service and to set your own URL, contact Intercede customer support.

The in-app Authenticator App options can also be customized. Once these are set, they cannot be changed by the user.

To show a custom logo at the top of the Authenticator App, enter a public URL to a graphic file that the mobile device can access. When provisioned, the Authenticator App accesses the URL and downloads and stores the graphic within the Authenticator App. The graphic should be a 900 x 210 transparent PNG image. For accessibility purposes. You are recommended to enter a description for the logo. This may just be the company name.



5.2.10 Certificates tab

The Certificates tab allows you to change the MyID Server signing certificate. This certificate is used to secure the MyID data stored in Active Directory and the Server Password Vault.

By default, the installation program generates a self-signed certificate.

This is not the certificate used by IIS for HTTPS (SSL) connections to the server.

MyID PSM & MFA Properties X										
Grid Options Phrase One Time Code YubiKey OTP Authenticator App										
General RADIUS	Alerts Remediation	on Schedule	Grid Pattern Policy							
FIDO2 MyID CMS	Certificates SMTF	P Delivery SMS	Delivery Licence							
Authentication Ser	Authentication Server Certificate									
Friendly Name: Authlogics Server Cert										
Subject Name:	Subject Name: CN=*federationdemo.com									
Thumbprint:	Thumbprint: DE14AB8EAFD2706D04F0344E0AB4C1E4FD5B5									
Expiry Date:	3/5/2034 2:34:50 PM									
Private Key:	Yes									
Certificate Inform	ation	[Change							
Client Trusted	Root Certificate									
Friendly Name:										
Expiry Date:	Expiry Date:									
Certificate Information Browse										
	ОК	Cancel	Apply							

The Authentication Server Certificate contains the public and private keys used to carry out asymmetric encryption and decryption of the stored data. An instance of the certificate, along with its private key, must be installed on each MyID Server in the Windows Computer certificate store. If the private key is not available, the Authentication Server cannot operate.

Warning: If the private key is lost it is not possible to recover the MyID data stored in Active Directory.

If you are using the Windows Desktop Agent, you can select a MyID Server Certificate Trusted Root certificate. If there is an enterprise CA available, you can specify a CA root certificate. This requires that all MyID Desktop Agent machines have a certificate installed on them that was issued from the specified root. If such a certificate is unavailable, some of the agent's features are not available, for example, offline and passwordless logons. If a MyID Server Certificate Trusted Root certificate is not configured, the default Self Signed Certificates are used.

All Windows Desktop Agents connecting to the MyID Authentication Server using the External Access Server role must have a trusted certificate installed on it so that it can be validated by the MyID Authentication Server.



5.2.11 Grid Pattern Policy tab

This tab configures the pattern policy and complexity settings.

MyID PSM & MFA Properties X								
Grid Options Phrase One Time Code YubiKey OTP Authenticator App Certificates SMTP Delivery SMS Delivery Licence FIDO2 MyID CMS General RADIUS Alerts Remediation Schedule Grid Pattern Policy								
Pattern Policy Minimum Length: 6 Pattern Pattern age in days: 2 min 42 max Enforce pattern history: 24 patterns remembered								
Pattem Complexity Enforce complexity: Block sequential straight lines Block single plane Restrict sequential linear adjacencies Restrict cell instance usage Restrict number of quadrants								
Maximum sequential linear adjacencies: 4 Maximum cell usage instances: 3 Minimum quadrant number: 1								
OK Cancel Apply								



The **Minimum length** setting determines the least number of characters allowed for a pattern. The larger the number, the more secure the patterns are, but the more complex they are for users to manage.

The minimum and maximum **Pattern age in days**, prevents users from excessive changes of patterns within a short period and forces users to change their pattern regularly.

By enabling **Enforce pattern history**, an administrator can prevent users from re-using previously used patterns. Specify how many previous patterns are remembered.

Enforcing complexity ensures that users do not choose simple patterns that could be easily guessed. Administrators can enforce the following complexity checks:

- Block sequential straight lines.
 - Blocks the use of a straight line in any direction in a contiguous chain and sequence.
- Block single plane.

Blocks the usability to select all positions in a pattern that are on the same plane in any orientation, regardless of spacing or sequence. This includes straight lines.

• Restrict sequential linear adjacencies.

Restricts the maximum number of allowed positions that are sequential and in a straight line before a gap and change of direction is required.

• Restrict cell instance usage.

Restricts the number of times the same cell can be selected when choosing a pattern. For example, if the **Maximum cell usage instances** is two then a maximum of two cells, within the selected pattern, can be re-used.

• Restrict number of quadrants.

Restricts the minimum number of quadrants a chosen pattern must use.

For example, if the **Minimum quadrant number** is two, then a pattern must use at least two of the four quadrants. While this encourages a user to choose a pattern that is well spread out, it also limits the number of possible pattern combinations available.



5.2.12 Grid Options tab

This tab configures generic and visual elements of MyID Grid authentication.

MyID PS	M & MFA P	roperties				×			
FIDO2	FIDO2 MyID CMS Certificates SMTP Delivery SMS Delivery Licer								
General Grid Opti	RADIUS ions Phrase	Alerts Re e One Time	Code Yu	Schedu ubiKey O	TP Authentio	em Policy cator App			
Grid	Settings								
Mir	nimum grid siz	e: (0)60	X 6 squares	08	X 8 squares				
Gri	d bitmap size	250	韋 pixe	ls wide &	high				
	Send email g	nids as HTML							
Grid	Quadrant Col	ours							
Clic	ck a quadrant our which wil	to change th be used to d	ie raw						
ser	ver generate	d challenge g	rids.						
	Set <u>D</u> efault	S							
			ОК	Car	ncel	Apply			

The **Minimum grid size** defines the smallest size grids that users can have.

If you are using the MyID Authentication Server for deviceless logons through an API, you can use the **Grid bitmap size** option to specify the default dimensions of the PNG image that is displayed on the client to suit the location you are displaying the image.

Note: The Grid bitmap size option is relevant only if you are using an API call to get the grid; for example, using GetPinGridToken. If you are instead using the MyID Authentication Server for deviceless logons through the IdP, the IdP manages the rendering size of the grid to ensure that it fits well within the overall layout of the page, overriding any user-defined bitmap size.

You can also customize the grid colors used to display the squares in each quadrant of the grid.

When challenge grids are delivered using email, the **Send email grids as HTML** option defines whether challenge grids are generated in plain text or as HTML.

To return the Grid Quadrant Colours to the default colors, click the Set Defaults button.



5.2.13 Phrase tab

This tab configures the standard Phrase policy settings.

						~	
MyID PSM	& MFA Pi	ropertie	5			×	
Certificates General Grid Option Policy Minim Minim Mess	s SMTP [RADIUS ns Phrase Settings num Length num Questio age prefix f	Delivery Alerts Dne n: ons:	SMS Delivery Remediation Time Code Yu	Licence Schedule JbiKey OTP	FIDO2 Grid Pa Auther	MyID CMS attern Policy nticator App	
#	Question	- What i	s				
1	your Code	eword					
2	your moth	er maide	n				
3	yourfavo	urite spor	ts teams				
4	your favo	urite subj	ect at school				
5	5 your spouses middle name						
	Jse multiple	questior	ıs per login		Ad	d	
			OK	Cance	4	Apply	

The **Minimum Length** sets the minimum number of characters that a user must enter for each answer.

The **Minimum Questions** setting allows an administrator to specify the minimum number of questions that a user must answer to be fully provisioned for phrase authentication. Phrase authentication allows administrators to create multiple questions and allow a user to select a subset of those questions to answer.

The **Message prefix text** precedes all Phrase challenges which are sent to mobile devices.

By default, the only question is your Codeword; this is to cater for auto-provisioning where a user is provided with a random dictionary word to get them started. It is not recommended to change the first challenge question. To modify and add new Phrase challenge questions, click **Add**.

Enable the **Use multiple questions per login** option to make Phrase randomly ask for letters from answers to multiple questions instead of picking random letters from a single answer. This option can increase security but may make it harder for users to login.



5.2.14 One Time Code tab

This tab configures the standard One Time Code policy settings.

MyID PSM & MFA Properti	es			×						
Certificates SMTP Delivery SMS Delivery Licence FIDO2 MyID CMS General RADIUS Alerts Remediation Schedule Grid Pattern Policy Grid Options Phrase One Time Code YubiKey OTP Authenticator App										
Policy Settings ✓ Require static PIN / Minimum OTP Length: Minimum PIN Length: PIN / Password Position: Message prefix text: The Message prefix text The Message prefix text or an indication of a.g. "Acme loc. remote	AD Password 6 digit 4 digit Any OTC d is placed at the and can be used what the PINpas access for "Sec	s beginning o as an introd s code is fo	of the SN uction to r.	V IS / the						
	ОК	Cance	1	Apply						

One Time Code (OTC) can be used as a single or Multi-Factor Authentication solution. To enforce two-factor authentication with OTC, enable the **Require PIN / AD Password** option; if this option is enabled, the user must enter a PIN code or Password along with a One Time PIN (OTP) when authenticating. This option is typically disabled when OTC is only being used to validate OTPs and static data such as passwords are being verified elsewhere, or not at all.

The **Minimum OTP Length** option sets the minimum number of digits allowed in an OTP code generated. The actual number of digits is set on a per-user basis but cannot be lower than this number.

The **Minimum PIN Length** option allows an administrator to specify the minimum number of digits in a user's static PIN code. This length is ignored when using Active Directory passwords in place of a PIN code.

The **PIN / Password position** option dictates where users must enter the static PIN / Password in relation to the OTP. The default setting is Any.

The Message prefix text that precedes all OTC token challenges.



5.2.15 YubiKey OTP tab

This tab configures the YubiKey One Time PIN policy settings.

MyID PSM & MFA P	roperties					×
FIDO2 MyID CMS General RADIUS Grid Options Phras	Certificates Alerts Rer e One Time	SMTP De mediation Code Yu	elivery Sched ubiKey (SMS Iule DTP	Delivery Grid Patte Authentic	Licence em Policy cator App
Policy Settings	Key OTP Yubico Online PIN / AD Pas	Authentica	tion			
Minimum PI	N Length: 4	<u></u>	digits			
		OK	Ca	ancel		Apply

MyID MFA supports both programmed and native (non-reprogrammed) YubiKey devices. In order to validate non-reprogrammed YubiKey devices, the MyID Server requires access to the Yubico servers hosted in the cloud. **Enable Yubico Online Authentication** to pass non-reprogrammed YubiKey OTPs to the Yubico servers in the cloud.

YubiKey OTPs can be used as a single or Multi-Factor Authentication solution. To enforce two-factor authentication with your YubiKey OTP, enable the **Require PIN / AD Password** option; when this is enabled, the user must enter a PIN code or Password along with their YubiKey One Time PIN (OTP) when authenticating. This option is typically disabled when OTC is only being used to validate OTPs and static data such as a password is being verified elsewhere, or not at all.

The **Minimum PIN Length** option allows an administrator to specify the minimum number of digits in a user's static PIN code. This length is ignored when using Active Directory passwords in place of a PIN code.

The **PIN / Password position** option dictates where users must enter the static PIN / Password in relation to the OTP. The default setting is Any.



5.2.16 FIDO2 tab

This tab configures the FIDO2 Passkey settings.

MyID PSM	/lyID PSM & MFA Properties							
Grid Option General FIDO2	ns Phrase RADIUS MyID CMS	e One Time Alerts Ren Certificates	Code mediation SMTP I	YubiKey Sche Delivery	OTP dule SMS	Authentio Grid Patte Delivery	cator App em Policy Licence	•
Setting	gs Nlow synced Nlow device ∑ Save W	l passkeys -bound passk indows passv	ceys vord with	credentia	al	*fic		
Allowe	d Devices Only allow th ACS FIDO A ACS FIDO A Allthenticato Android Auti Arculus FID Arculus FID ATKey.Card ATKey.Card	e following de uthenticator uthenticator vit nenticator wit 0 2.1 Key Ca 02/U2F Key C CTAP2.0 NFC	Card g BLE FI h SafetyN rd [P71] Card	es: DO2 Alith let Attest	nentica tation	ator for Wi	Apply	

MyID MFA supports both FIDO2 synced and device-bound passkeys. Users need to be provisioned and enabled for FIDO2 support individually.

Enable the **Allow synced passkeys** option to enable support for synced passkeys. Synced passkeys are typically installed on mobile devices.

Enable the **Allow device-bound passkeys** option to enable support for device-bound passkeys. Device-bound passkeys are typically separate hardware tokens such as those provided by Yubico.

Enable the **Save Windows password with credential** option to bind the user's Active Directory password with the user's FIDO credential for passwordless login. This password is not stored with the MyID MFA password vault.



5.2.17 MyID CMS tab

This tab configures the MyID CMS settings to allow for integration between the MyID MFA/PSM Server and the MyID CMS Server.

MyID PSN	1 & I	MFA Pi	roperti	25						×
Grid Optio	ons	Phrase	e One	Time	Code	Yu	biKey	отр	Authenti	cator App
General	RA		Alerts	Rer	nediatio	on 2 Do	Sche	dule	Grid Patte	ern Policy
Interg CM CM Clie Clie	ratior Enab S Ser S Cal nt ID nt Sc	n Setting ver UR Iback U : ::	gs i notifica L: JRL:	ations https: https: myid.r myid.r	//myid/ //myid/ noticatio	/web /MF/ ons	o.oauth ABroke basic	1 <mark>2</mark> er		
Clie	nt Se	cret:		••••		•••	••••			•••
					OK		C	ancel		Apply

You require the following information to complete the configuration:

• **CMS Server URL** – the MyID CMS OAuth2 Authentication Service URL. For example:

```
https://myid/web.oauth2
```

• CMS Callback URL - the MyID CMS MFA Broker Service URL.

For example:

https://myid/MFABroker

• Client ID - the MyID CMS Client ID used to authenticate.

For example:

myid.notifications

• Client Scope – the MyID CMS Client Scope used to authenticate. For example:

```
myid.notifications.basic
```

• Client Secret – the MyID CMS Client Secret used to authenticate. For example:

```
4116e8f9-92e2-48b1-8616-5fb3d130b91d
```



5.3 Domain settings

The MyID Domain settings are a set of domain specific configuration options that apply to all MyID servers in the forest and are not per-user settings. To access the domain settings:

- 1. In the MyID Management Console, highlight the **Domains** node.
- 2. Click **Properties**, in the **Actions** pane.



The Domain Properties dialog opens.

See section 5.3.1, Domain Properties dialog for details.



5.3.1 Domain Properties dialog

The Domain Properties dialog allows administrators to control various Active Directory specific options.

Domains Properties	×
Active Directory	
AD Options Enable MyID Password Vault	
Enforce random password when changed (Requires DC Agent) Randomise AD Passwords every: A passwords every: Require private mobile phone numbers	
AD Passthrough Authentication Enable Active Directory Passthrough Authentication Browse	
AD Custom Attribute Lookups Additional Usemame: Secondary email address:	
OK Cancel Apply	

The MyID Password Vault is a secure storage location protected with AES 256-bit asymmetric encryption with certificates. The password vault stores user passwords to allow for Passwordless logons to Windows and other applications. This feature can be used in conjunction with the Windows Desktop Agent with Passwordless logons enabled. The Password Vault is disabled by default and must be explicitly enabled.

Randomise AD Password enables the MyID Server to automatically manage user passwords by setting them to a highly secure random value regularly. The random passwords are kept secure because the users never know what they are, and they constantly change. This feature must only be used in conjunction with MyID Agents which support Passwordless logons such as the Windows Desktop Agent with Passwordless logons enabled.

To enable this feature, specify how many days until the passwords must be randomly changed. If you set it to 0, the feature is disabled. You can also enable **Enforce random AD Password** when changed, which prevents a user's password from being reset/changed to a non-random password. If it is not enforced, the password reset is allowed, and the new password can be used until the next randomization schedule. The block is done directly at the Domain Controller by the Domain Controller Agent which must be installed separately on all Domain Controllers.

To force password randomization of all accounts, click **Run Now**. This causes the Password Policy Agent to run the password randomization task within the next 15 minutes.

To ensure that all user mobile phone numbers are kept private, enable **Require private mobile phone numbers**. This setting ensures that mobile numbers are encrypted instead of using the clear text default mobile phone Active Directory field.



AD Passthrough Authentication allows logon attempts to be passed directly to Active Directory for logon processing if a user has not been provisioned for MFA. AD Passthrough Authentication is only permitted for user accounts that are a member of a specified AD group and is disabled by default. To enable AD Passthrough Authentication,

- 1. Enable the Enable Active Directory Passthrough Authentication option.
- 2. Click Browse.
- 3. Select the Active Directory group that contains the user accounts which are permitted to use AD Passthrough Authentication.

AD Custom Attribute Lookups enables MyID to use custom LDAP attributes on a user account when looking up a user account name or secondary email address.

The Additional Username option may be useful to locate a user account using an employee number instead of an Active Directory account name. If the employee number is stored in **extensionAttribute1** in Active Directory, you can configure MyID to also look in the specified attribute. The custom field is used as a secondary addition to the standard Username or UPN, if an account match is found using the standard Username, the custom LDAP field is not searched.

The **Secondary email address** option can be used to locate a secondary email address for a user account. The secondary email address can be used in the authentication provisioning wizards for sending welcome emails to.

To enable a custom attribute lookup, enable **Additional Username** or **Secondary email address**, and select an LDAP attribute from the list that MyID should search.



5.4 Applications

Applications are all IdP published services and websites that require authentication. MyID includes three preconfigured applications: the Self Service Portal, the Web Admin Portal, and the Windows Desktop agent service. To access the applications settings:

- 1. In the MyID Management Console, highlight the Applications node.
- 2. Click **Properties**, in the **Actions** pane.



You can access the following properties dialogs:

- · Applications Properties
- Self Service Portal Properties
- Web Management Portal Properties
- Windows Desktop Agent Properties
- SAML 2.0 application properties



5.4.1 Applications Properties

The Applications Properties dialog allows administrators to control the Identity Provider (IdP) server options. These properties apply to all MyID IdP servers in the forest and are not peruser settings.

5.4.1.1 Identity Provider tab

Applications Properties	\times
Identity Provider Signing Certificates SAML 2.0	
Server Settings	
IdP Host: idp	
IdP Domain: federationdemo.com	
TCP Port: 443	
OpenID Connect Information	
Authority URI: https://idp.federationdemo.com/idp	
Multiple DNS Domains	
Enabled federationdemo.com	
✓	
OK Cancel Apply	

The IdP Host is the DNS name of the MyID Authentication Server (or servers).

The IdP Domain is the domain name of the MyID Authentication Server.

The **IdP Host** and **IdP Domain** are combined to create the DNS Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) for accessing the MyID Authentication Server from web based clients.

While the DNS FQDN must resolve to the IP address of the MyID Authentication Server, it does not have to be the actual name of the MyID Authentication Server. If you have multiple authentication servers for high availability, you must set the **IdP Host** and **IdP Domain** to create a virtual name that either resolves to all authentication servers, or to a network load balancer virtual IP address.

The MyID Authentication Server operates on the HTTPs protocol and is bound to the port specified within the **TCP Port** option. By default, the **TCP Port** is 14443; however, you are recommended to use port 443 with a matching trusted SSL certificate. You must configure the certificate and TCP binding separately on each authentication server in your IIS.



In the **OpenID Connect Information** section, the **Authority URI** is dynamically built based on the **IdP Host**, **IdP Domain**, and **TCP Port** settings.

If the same IdP is used with multiple DNS domains, for example if there are multiple DNS domain names associated with a Microsoft Azure tenant, you must enable **Multiple DNS Domains**, and list the domains.

If you are using only one domain, you are not required to add it to the list.

5.4.1.2 Signing Certificates tab

Applications Properties	Х
Identity Provider Signing Certificates SAML 2.0	
Primary IdP Signing Certificate	
Expiry Date: 3/5/2034 2:34:55 PM	
Certificate Information Browse	
Secondary IdP Signing Certificate Friendly Name:	
Expiry Date:	
Certificate Information Remove Browse	
Certificate Management	
Swap the Primary and Secondary Certificates.	
Swap	
OK Cancel Apply	

You must have at least one IdP signing certificate. You can configure a Secondary IdP Signing Certificate with a different expiry date to the Primary IdP Signing Certificate to allow for certificate rollover without service interruption.

IdP signing certificates do not have to be publicly trusted as they are not SSL certs; they are shared with application service providers during app setup.





5.4.1.3 SAML 2.0 tab

Applications Properties	;	Х
Identity Provider Signir	ig Certificates SAML 2.0	
Identity Provider (IdP)	
Description:	MyID Identity Provider	
Issuer URI:	um:uri:idpfederationdemocom	
Entity ID URI:		
um:uri:idpfederatio	ndemocom 🗸 🗋	
Single Sign On Ser	vice URL:	
https://idp.federat	iondemo.com/idp/SAML/SingleSignOnServ	
Single Logout Serv	ice URL:	
https://idp.federat	iondemo.com/idp/SAML/SingleLogoutServi	
Artifact Resolution	Service URL:	
https://idp.federat	iondemo.com/idp/SAML/ArtifactResolution!	
IdP Metadata URL	:	
https://idp.federat	iondemo.com/idp/SAML/ExportMetadata	
	OK Cancel Apply	

On the **SAML 2.0** tab, you can enter a **Description** for your MyID IdP Server.

The Issuer Uri must be a unique value. By default it is configured in the following format:

urn:uri:<server-host><server-domain-with-no-dots>

Where:

- <server-host> is the IdP Host.
- <server-domain-with-no-dots> is the IdP Domain without dots.

For information on setting the IdP Host and IdP Domain, see section 5.4.1.1, Identity Provider tab.

If you have configured multiple domains, multiple **Entity ID URI** values are dynamically created; you can view these in the drop-down list. For each domain, a unique Issuer URI is created in the following format:

urn:uri:{server-host}{server-domain-with-no-dots}:{mult-domain-name-withno-dots}

Where:

- <server-host> is the IdP Host.
- <server-domain-with-no-dots> is the IdP Domain without dots.
- <mult-domain-name-with-no-dots> is a domain from your Multiple DNS Domains list.

For information on setting the IdP Host, IdP Domain, and multiple DNS domains, see section *5.4.1.1*, *Identity Provider tab*.





The URLs to access the Single Sign On Service, Single Logout Service, Artifact Resolution Service, and the IdP Metadata are displayed for your information. You can click the button next to each URL to copy it to your clipboard.



5.4.2 Self Service Portal Properties

The Self Service Portals properties dialog contains the customization options for the Self Service Portal. The MyID Authentication Server includes a user Self Service Portal where users can perform various common administrative tasks themselves such as register a new MFA device, change their Grid pattern, Phrase answers, static YubiKey and OTC PINs and reset their Active Directory password and update their mobile/cellular phone number. The Web Management Portal provides basic administration and operational capabilities suited to helpdesk personnel.

The portal is designed to be compatible with desktop and mobile browsers.

To access the Self Service Portal application properties:

- 1. In the MyID Management Console, enter the Applications node.
- 2. Highlight the Self Service Portal.



3. Click Properties, in the Actions pane.





5.4.2.1 Authentication tab

Self Service Portal P	roperties	×
Authentication Set	tings OpenID Connect	
Internal Authentio	cation	
Logon technolo	ogy: Automatic 🗸 🗸	
	Allow any user configured technology	
	Allow Deviceless MFA	
	Enable Passwordless MFA	
Password reset	via: SMS / Text 🗹 Email	
External Authenti	cation	
External Identiti	es linked with this Application:	
	emailidenuty	
	OK Cancel Apply	

You can specify the logon technology users must use to authenticate to the portal. The available options are:

- Disabled
- Automatic (MFA only)
- Push
- Grid
- Phrase
- One Time Code
- Passkey
- YubiKey OTP
- Password (Active Directory password)
- Windows Authentication (pass-through authentication)
- Certificate



When an MFA license is installed, the default logon option for the portals is **Automatic** (MFA only). If only a PSM license is installed, the options are limited to **Password** and **Windows Authentication**, with **Password** being the default logon option.

Automatic determines the most appropriate MFA technology for a user to authenticate with. If a user is enabled for multiple MFA technologies, the application chooses the highest security MFA technology based on in-built hierarchy.

If you enable the **Allow any user configured technology** option, users are allowed to authenticate using any MFA technology for which they are provisioned. If this option is not selected, the user must enter valid authentication credentials shown by the application only. Other MFA technology credentials that a user may be provisioned for do not work and they must provide the credentials display of the Self Service logon page.

Grid and Phrase authentication technologies both support Deviceless authentication, enable the **Allow Deviceless MFA** option to enable this support. If this is not enabled, then MFA is always required.

If you enable **Allow Passwordless MFA**, that enables passwordless logins. When disabled, users are required to enter a valid Active Directory password as well as their MFA credentials.

When only a PSM license is installed, the Self Service Portal can still issue One Time Codes using SMS/Text or Email for Active Directory Password reset purposes. To use this feature, the logon type must be set to **Password** and either **SMS/ Text** or **Email** must be checked.

The External Identities linked with this application allow users to authenticate to the website or service using a preconfigured external identity provider; for information on adding an external identity, see section *5.6*, *Adding External Identities*.





5.4.2.2 Settings tab

Self Service Portal Properties		
Authentication	Settings OpenID Connect	
General Set	ttings	
Email UR	L: https://primary.authlogicsdemo.com:14443/]
The Emai welcome for a new the Authe SSL certif	I URL is the address that is embedded into onboarding emails which are sent to users when they are provisioned account or MFA technology. This URL should resolve to entication Server and must match the port, DNS name and ficate details in IIS.	
Allowed Us	er Actions	
Unloci	k AD Account	
Reset	AD Password	
AL	uto unlock AD Account on password reset	
Chang	e Mobile / Cellular phone number	
Add T	oken devices 🛛 Remove Token devices	
	OK Cancel App	ly

The **Email URL** must be an accessible and resolvable web-based address that provides users access to the Self Service Portal hosted on the Authentication Server. The default HTTPS port (SSL) for the SSP is TCP:14443, although additional ports can be configured within IIS. A reverse proxy or SSL VPN device may be used to provide connectivity to the portal if required.

Administrators can enable or disable the user's ability to perform the following actions though the Self Service Portal (depending on the installed product license):

- Unlock AD Account Allows users to unlock their Active Directory Account.
- Reset AD Password Allows users to reset their Active Directory Password.
 - Auto unlock AD Account on password reset Auto unlocks the user's Active Directory Account when their password is reset.
- Change Mobile / Cellular phone number Allows users to change their mobile/cellular phone number.
- Add Token devices Allows users to add token devices.
- Remove Token devices Allows users to remove token devices.





5.4.2.3 OpenID Connect tab

The OpenID Connect tab details the IdP Server and Relying Party trust settings.

Self Service Port	al Prope	ties	×
Authentication	Settings	OpenID Connect	
Identity Provi	ider (ldP)		
Client ID:	int	emal.selfservice	
Client Secr	et: 🕨	••••••	
Relying Party	(RP)		
Grant Type	e: C	ode 🗸 🗸	
Redirect U	RI: ht	tps://server.authlogicsdemo.com:14443/ssp/si	
Logout UR	l: ht	tps://server.authlogicsdemo.com:14443/ssp/si	
Scopes:] profile] email] phone	
		OK Cancel Apply	

Through this, you can specify the Self Service Portal's **Grant Type**, **Redirect** and **Logout URIs** and the scope for the relying party trust.



5.4.3 Web Management Portal Properties

The Web Management Portal application properties contain the customization options for the Web Management Portal. The MyID Authentication Server includes a user Web Management Portal where administrators and web operators can perform basic administration and operational capabilities suited to helpdesk personnel.

The portal is designed to be compatible with desktop and mobile browsers.

To access the Web Management Portal application properties:

- 1. In the MyID Management Console, enter the **Applications** node.
- 2. Highlight the Web Management Portal.

O MyID Management Console		-	□ ×
<u> </u>	Help		- 8 ×
🗢 🏟 🙍 📅 🗟 🚺 🖬			
📔 MyID PSM & MFA	Applications All configured Applications	Actions	
> Domains		Applications	•
Applications	Self Service Web Windows	2 Add Application	
External Identities	Portal Management Deskto	Refresh Applications	
> 🍇 Koles	Porta	View	•
		New Window from Here	
		Export List	
		Properties	
		Help	
		Web Management Portal	•
		Enable	
		S Disable	
		Properties	
		Help	
]]	

3. Click **Properties**, in the **Actions** pane.





5.4.3.1 Authentication tab

Web Management Portal Properties	×
Authentication OpenID Connect	
Internal Authentication	
Logon technology: Automatic ~	
Allow any user configured technology	
Allow Deviceless MFA	
Enable Passwordless MFA	
Password reset via: SMS / Text Email	
External Authentication	1
External Identities linked with this Application:	
OK Cancel Apply	

You can specify the logon technology users must use to authenticate to the portal. The available options are:

- Disabled
- Automatic (MFA only)
- Push
- Grid
- Phrase
- One Time Code
- Passkey
- YubiKey OTP
- Password (Active Directory password)
- Windows Authentication (pass-through authentication)
- Certificate



When an MFA license is installed, the default logon option for the portals is **Automatic** (MFA only). If only a PSM license is installed, the options are limited to **Password** and **Windows Authentication**, with **Password** being the default logon option.

Automatic determines the most appropriate MFA technology for a user to authenticate with. If a user is enabled for multiple MFA technologies, the application chooses the highest security MFA technology based on in-built hierarchy.

If you enable the **Allow any user configured technology** option, users are allowed to authenticate using any MFA technology for which they are provisioned. If this option is not selected, the user must enter valid authentication credentials shown by the application only. Other MFA technology credentials that a user may be provisioned for do not work and they must provide the credentials display of the Self Service logon page.

Grid and Phrase authentication technologies both support Deviceless authentication, enable the **Allow Deviceless MFA** option to enable this support. If this is not enabled, then MFA is always required.

If you enable **Allow Passwordless MFA**, that enables passwordless logins. When disabled, users are required to enter a valid Active Directory password as well as their MFA credentials.

When only a PSM license is installed, the Self Service Portal can still issue One Time Codes using SMS/Text or Email for Active Directory Password reset purposes. To use this feature, the logon type must be set to **Password** and either **SMS/ Text** or **Email** must be checked.

The External Identities linked with this application allows users to authenticate to the website or service using a preconfigured external identity provider; for information on adding an external identity, see section *5.6*, *Adding External Identities*.





5.4.3.2 OpenID Connect tab

The OpenID Connect tab details the IdP Server and Relying Party trust settings.

Web Managem	nent Po	rtal Properties	×
Authentication	Open	D Connect	
Identity Prov	/ider (ld	P)	
Client ID:		internal.webmanagement	
Client Sec	ret:	••••••	
Relying Part	y (RP)		
Grant Typ	e:	Code ~	
Redirect (JRI:	https://server.authlogicsdemo.com:14443/admin	
Logout U	RI:	https://server.authlogicsdemo.com:14443/admin	
Scopes:		profile email phone	
		OK Cancel Apply	

Through this, you can specify the Web Management Portal's **Grant Type**, **Redirect** and **Logout URIs** and the scope for the relying party trust.



5.4.4 Windows Desktop Agent Properties

The MFA Windows Desktop Agent tabs contain the customization options for the MyID MFA Windows Desktop Agent.

The portal is designed to be compatible with desktop and mobile browsers.

To access the Windows Desktop Agent application properties:

- 1. In the MyID Management Console, enter the Applications node.
- 2. Highlight the Windows Desktop Web Sign-in.

O MyID Management Console		- 🗆 ×
File Action View Window	Help	_ <i>8</i> ×
🗢 🄿 🙍 📰 🗟 🖬 🖬		
MyID PSM & MFA	Applications All configured Applications	Actions
> Domains	$\bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc$	Applications 🔺
Applications	Self Web Windows	😿 Add Application
> 👉 External Identities	Service P Manageme Desktop Web	Refresh Applications
> 😹 Koles	Sign-in	View 🕨
		New Window from Here
		Export List
		Properties
		Help
		Windows Desktop Web Sign-in
		Enable
		Disable
		Properties
		Help
	1	0

3. Click **Properties**, in the **Actions** pane.





5.4.4.1 Authentication tab

Windows Desktop Web Sign-in Properties	\times
Authentication OpenID Connect	
Internal Authentication	
Logon technology: Push ~	
□ Allow any user configured technology	
Allow Deviceless MFA	
☑ Enable Passwordless MFA	
Password reset via: SMS / Text Email	
External Authentication	
External Identities linked with this Application:	
OK Cancel Apply	

You can specify the logon technology users must use to authenticate to the portal. The available options are:

- Disabled
- Automatic (MFA only)
- Push
- Grid
- Phrase
- One Time Code
- Passkey
- YubiKey OTP
- Password (Active Directory password)
- Windows Authentication (pass-through authentication)
- Certificate



When an MFA license is installed, the default logon option for the portals is **Automatic** (MFA only). If only a PSM license is installed, the options are limited to **Password** and **Windows Authentication**, with **Password** being the default logon option.

Automatic determines the most appropriate MFA technology for a user to authenticate with. If a user is enabled for multiple MFA technologies, the application chooses the highest security MFA technology based on in-built hierarchy.

If you enable the **Allow any user configured technology** option, users are allowed to authenticate using any MFA technology for which they are provisioned. If this option is not selected, the user must enter valid authentication credentials shown by the application only. Other MFA technology credentials that a user may be provisioned for do not work and they must provide the credentials display of the Self Service logon page.

Grid and Phrase authentication technologies both support Deviceless authentication, enable the **Allow Deviceless MFA** option to enable this support. If this is not enabled, then MFA is always required.

If you enable **Allow Passwordless MFA**, that enables passwordless logins. When disabled, users are required to enter a valid Active Directory password as well as their MFA credentials.

When only a PSM license is installed, the Self Service Portal can still issue One Time Codes using SMS/Text or Email for Active Directory Password reset purposes. To use this feature, the logon type must be set to **Password** and either **SMS/ Text** or **Email** must be checked.

The **External Identities linked with this application** option allows users to authenticate to the website or service using a preconfigured external identity provider; for information on adding an external identity, see section *5.6*, *Adding External Identities*.





5.4.4.2 OpenID Connect tab

The OpenID Connect tab details the IdP Server and Relying Party trust settings.

Windows Desk	top We	b Sign-in Properties	×
Authentication	Open	D Connect	
Identity Prov	/ider (Id	P)	
Client ID:		internal.desktop	
Client Sec	ret:	••••••	
Relying Part	ty (RP)		
Grant Typ	e:	Code ~	
Scopes:		profile email phone	
Redirect U	JRI:	http://127.0.0.1/pkce	
Logout UF	RI:	http://127.0.0.1/pkce	
		OK Cancel Apply	

Through this, you can specify the Windows Desktop Agent's **Grant Type**, **Redirect** and **Logout URIs** and the scope for the relying party trust.

5.4.5 SAML 2.0 application properties

The applications properties dialog of a SAML 2.0 application allows administrators to control the SAML 2.0 application. For more information on adding a SAML 2.0 application, see section 5.5.2, *Creating a SAML 2.0 application*.





5.4.5.1 Authentication tab

My SAML 2.0 App Properties	×
Authentication SAML 2.0 Claims Mapping	
Internal Authentication	
Logon technology: Automatic ~	
Allow any user configured technology	
Allow Deviceless MFA	
Enable Passwordless MFA	
Password reset via: SMS / Text Email	
External Authentication	
External Identities linked with this Application:	
OK Cancel Apply	

You can specify the logon technology users must use to authenticate to the portal. The available options are:

- Disabled
- Automatic (MFA only)
- Push
- Grid
- Phrase
- One Time Code
- Passkey
- YubiKey OTP
- Password (Active Directory password)
- Windows Authentication (pass-through authentication)
- Certificate



When an MFA license is installed, the default logon option for the portals is **Automatic** (MFA only). If only a PSM license is installed, the options are limited to **Password** and **Windows Authentication**, with **Password** being the default logon option.

Automatic determines the most appropriate MFA technology for a user to authenticate with. If a user is enabled for multiple MFA technologies, the application chooses the highest security MFA technology based on in-built hierarchy.

If you enable the **Allow any user configured technology** option, users are allowed to authenticate using any MFA technology for which they are provisioned. If this option is not selected, the user must enter valid authentication credentials shown by the application only. Other MFA technology credentials that a user may be provisioned for do not work and they must provide the credentials display of the Self Service logon page.

Grid and Phrase authentication technologies both support Deviceless authentication, enable the **Allow Deviceless MFA** option to enable this support. If this is not enabled, then MFA is always required.

If you enable **Allow Passwordless MFA**, that enables passwordless logins. When disabled, users are required to enter a valid Active Directory password as well as their MFA credentials.

My SAML 2.0 App Pro	operties	Х
Authentication SAM	2.0 Claims Mapping	
Service Provider (S	P)	
Description:	[
Entity ID URI:	loadbalancer-9.siroe.com	
Assertion URL:	https://LoadBalancer-9.siroe.com:3443/federatio	
Logout URL:	https://LoadBalancer-9.siroe.com:3443/federatio	
Artifact URL:		
NameID Format:	um:oasis:names.tc:SAML:2.0:nameid-format:p $ \smallsetminus $	
Authn Context:	$[um:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:ac:classes:unsp] \lor]$	
SP Certificates:	CN=loadbalancer-9.siroe.com, O=siroe.com	
	Add Remove Cert Info	
Want Signed	Auth Request 🔲 Want Signed Logout Request	
Sign Assertio	n to SP Sign Logout Response to SP	
	OK Cancel Apply	

5.4.5.2 SAML 2.0 tab

The SAML 2.0 tab allows you to change the SAML settings of the application after you have created the application. The options are the same as when you create the application, except that you cannot import a metadata file; see section 5.5.2, *Creating a SAML 2.0 application* for details. of these options.





5.4.5.3 Claims Mapping tab

My SAML 2.0 App Propert	ies	\times
Authentication SAML 2.0	Claims Mapping	
Subject		
NameID property:	MailAddress 🗸 🗸	
Attribute Statement		
SAML Attribute:	~	
◉ User ○ LDAP	✓ Add	
SAML Attribute	User Property	
SAML Attribute	User Property	

The **NameID** is mapped during the application creation.

You can add any other claims required by the application on this tab.

To add a claims sample mapping:





1. Select a **SAML Attribute** from the list or type in a value for a custom SAML attribute.

My SAML 2.0 App Properti	es		×
Authentication SAML 2.0	Claims Mapping		
Subject			
NameID property:	MailAddress	~	
Attribute Statement			
SAML Attribute:		\sim	
◉ User ○ LDAP	Actor Anonymous Authentication	^	
SAML Attribute	AuthenticationInstant AuthenticationMethod AuthenticationDecision CookiePath Country DateOfBirth DenyOnlyPrimaryGroupSid DenyOnlyPrimarySid DenyOnlyWindowsDeviceGroup Dns Dsa Email Expiration Expired		
	GivenName GroupSid Hash HomePhone IsPersistent Locality MobilePhone Name NameIdentifier OtherPhone PostalCode	~	,

2. Select either a user property or an LDAP field to which you want to map the attribute.





ly SAML 2.0 App Propert	ties	×
Authentication SAML 2.0	Claims Mapping	
Subject		
NameID property:	MailAddress ~	
Attribute Statement		
SAML Attribute:	Sumame 🗸	
● User ○ LDAP	Add	
	AccountGuid AccountName	
SAML Attribute	Description	
	ExternalUser	
	FirstName	
	Groups LastName	
	MailAddress	
	MailAddress2 MobileNumber	
	Realm	
	UPN ValidErom	
	ValidTo	
	OK Cancel Apply	
ly SAML 2.0 App Propert	OK Cancel Apply	×
ly SAML 2.0 App Propert	OK Cancel Apply ties Claims Mapping	×
ly SAML 2.0 App Propert Authentication SAML 2.0 Subject	OK Cancel Apply ties Claims Mapping	×
ly SAML 2.0 App Propert Authentication SAML 2.0 Subject NameID property:	OK Cancel Apply ties Claims Mapping MailAddress	×
ly SAML 2.0 App Propert Authentication SAML 2.0 Subject NameID property: Attribute Statement	OK Cancel Apply ties Claims Mapping MailAddress	*
ly SAML 2.0 App Propert Authentication SAML 2.0 Subject NameID property: Attribute Statement SAML Attribute:	OK Cancel Apply ties Claims Mapping	×
ly SAML 2.0 App Propert Authentication SAML 2.0 Subject NameID property: Attribute Statement SAML Attribute:	OK Cancel Apply ties Claims Mapping	×
ly SAML 2.0 App Propert Authentication SAML 2.0 Subject NameID property: Attribute Statement SAML Attribute:	OK Cancel Apply ties Claims Mapping MailAddress Sumame LastName User Property	>
ly SAML 2.0 App Propert Authentication SAML 2.0 Subject NameID property: Attribute Statement SAML Attribute:	OK Cancel Apply ties Claims Mapping MailAddress Sumame LastName Add	×
Authentication SAML 2.0 Subject NameID property: Attribute Statement SAML Attribute: User O LDAP SAML Attribute	OK Cancel Apply ties Claims Mapping MailAddress ~ Sumame ~ IsstName Add	×

3. Click Add.

The mapping configuration is now complete and is visible in the list.




VIY SAIVIL 2.0 A	pp Properti	es				
Authentication	SAML 2.0	Claims Mapp	oing			
Subject						
NameID p	roperty:	MailAddress			`	2
Attribute Sta	tement					
SAML Attr	ibute:				`	
User	⊖ LDAP			~		
SAN	IL Attribute		User Pro	perty		٦
🗹 Sum	ame		LastName	•		

You can add multiple claim mappings to a single application.

To disable a mapping, deselect it in the list.

To test the IdP SAML configuration, you can use the following demo site:

sptest.iamshowcase.com

The site displays the information received through SAML attributes. The site does not support testing of SAML signing.



5.5 Adding new applications

Additional websites and services can be added to the IdP Applications. To add a new application:

1. In the MyID Management Console, highlight the Applications node.



2. Click Add Application, in the Actions pane.



- 3. Click Next.
- 4. Select the **App Type**, provide a descriptive **Name** for the application, and set the application to be **Enabled**.



MyID Applications support applications of type:

- OpenID Applications
 See section 5.5.1, Creating an OpenID Connect application.
- SAML 2.0 Applications See section 5.5.2, *Creating a SAML 2.0 application*.
- MyID CMS
- Microsoft 365

Follow the relevant instructions for the type of application that you want to add.



5.5.1 Creating an OpenID Connect application

📀 Add Application Wizard		×	
Application Information General information for the new Application.			
Provide a name and select th setup a generic OpenID con	e type of Application. You can choose a built in Application nect or SAML 2.0 Application.	n, or	
Арр Туре:	OpenID Application		
Name:	My OpenID Connect App		
	✓ Enabled		
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel	

1. Click Next.

📀 Add Application Wizard		×
OpenID Connect Relying F Enter the RP details for My S	Party (RP) SAML 2.0 App.	
Relying Party (RP)	details	
Grant Type:	Code ~	
Scopes:	profile mail phone	
Redirect URI:	https://myapp.server.com/redirect uri	
Logout URI:	https://myapp.server.com/logout	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

2. Enter the Relying Party trust details.



3. Click Next.

📀 Add App	olication Wizard					×
Authentic Select	cation Options the requied authenticati	on options.				
	Internal Authentication	Automatic Allow Devicele Allow Passw Allow any use	ess MFA ordless MF/ r MFA techr	A	~	
	Password reset via:	SMS / Text	Emai)		
			< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext >		Cancel

- 4. You can specify the logon technology users must use to authenticate. The available options are:
 - Disabled
 - Automatic (MFA only)
 - Push
 - Grid
 - Phrase
 - One Time Code
 - Passkey
 - YubiKey OTP
 - **Password** (Active Directory password)
 - Windows Authentication (pass-through authentication)
 - Certificate



When an MFA license is installed, the default logon option is **Automatic** (MFA only). If only a PSM license is installed, the options are limited to **Password** and **Windows Authentication**, with **Password** being the default logon option.

Automatic determines the most appropriate MFA technology for a user to authenticate with. If a user is enabled for multiple MFA technologies, the application chooses the highest security MFA technology based on in-built hierarchy.

If you enable the **Allow any user MFA technology** option, users are allowed to authenticate using any MFA technology for which they are provisioned. If this option is not selected, the user must enter valid authentication credentials shown by the application only. Other MFA technology credentials that a user may be provisioned for do not work and they must provide the credentials display of the Self Service logon page.

Grid and Phrase authentication technologies both support Deviceless authentication, enable the **Allow Deviceless MFA** option to enable this support. If this is not enabled, then MFA is always required.

If you enable **Allow Passwordless MFA**, that enables passwordless logins. When disabled, users are required to enter a valid Active Directory password as well as their MFA credentials.

5. Click Next.

📀 Add App	lication Wizard		×
Apply the Are you	configuration? ready to apply the	settings?	
The Add / OpenID C Click Next	Application Wizard H onnect App Applica to apply the config	has gathered all the information required to add the new My ation. juration changes.	,
	OpenID Connect	Summary	
	Client ID:	MyOpenIDConnectApp	
	Client Secret:	os9SDdp98MOykxBeBzCvsW9Tkt3b57vab	
	Important: Mak made available	ke a copy of the Client Secret now as it will not be a gain after the wizard is complete.	
		< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > C	Cancel

6. Make a copy of the OpenID Connect client secret for integration with the calling application.

This is necessary for later authentication.



7. Click Next.

📀 Add Application Wizard			×
Add Application Configuration Authentication Server is updating the Applic	cation data.		
Update Progress			
Adding new Application Done			^
			~
	< <u>B</u> ack	<u>F</u> inish	Cancel

8. Click Finish.

📀 MylD Management Console	-	□ ×
⊙ Eile Action ⊻iew Window Help		- 8 ×
MyID PSM & MFA Applications All configured Applications	Actions	
	Applications	•
Applications Set Service Web Windows My OpenID	😿 Add Application	
A Detail Manageme Deskto Connect App	Refresh Applications	
> 💑 Koles	View	•
	New Window from Here	
	Export List	
	Properties	
	I Help	

Your application has now been configured.



5.5.2 Creating a SAML 2.0 application

🧿 Add Application Wizard		×		
Application Information General information for the new Application.				
Provide a name and select th setup a generic OpenID con	e type of Application. You can choose a built in Application, or nect or SAML 2.0 Application.			
App Type:	SAML 2.0 Application V			
Name:	My SAML 2.0 App			
	Enabled			
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cance	I		

1. Click Next.

Q Add Application Wizard	×
SAML 2.0 Application Settings User Account NameID mapping and SAML Metadata import.	
Select the User Account property to be provided to My SAML 2.0 App for the Nan and import a SAML Metadata export file (optional) to create the SP configuration.	neID claim
NameID property: MailAddress Metadata Import: Import	~
< Back Next >	Cancel

2. Select the user property that contains the information required by the SAML 2.0 application for the **NameID** property.

The **NameID** is normally the main claim that the SAML 2.0 application uses for identifying the user; this is normally an email address or account name.

3. If you have a metadata export file from the application:





a. Click Import to import the metadata.

This can save configuration time, as metadata files contain valuable configuration data about an Application, including signing certificate information.

O Add Application Wizard	\times
SAML 2.0 Application Settings User Account NameID mapping and SAML Metadata import.	
Select the User Account property to be provided to My SAML 2.0 App for the Nam and import a SAML Metadata export file (optional) to create the SP configuration.	eID claim
SAML SP Metadata Import	×
The selected SAML SP Metadata file information has bee imported.	en
ОК	
< Back Next >	Cancel

b. Click OK.

The application metadata is imported. This populates some fields throughout the rest of the wizard.

4. Click Next.





O Add Application Wi	izard ×				
SAML 2.0 Service I Enter the Service P	SAML 2.0 Service Provider Configuration Enter the Service Provider details provided by My SAML 2.0 App.				
SAML 2.0 Service	Provider (SP)				
Description:					
Entity ID URI:	loadbalancer-9.siroe.com				
Assertion URL:	https://LoadBalancer-9.siroe.com:3443/federation/Consumer/met-				
Logout URL:	https://LoadBalancer-9.siroe.com:3443/federation/SPSIoRedirect.				
Artifact URL:					
NameID Format:	um:oasis:names.tc:SAML:2.0:nameid-format:persistent				
Authn Context:	um:oasis:names.tc:SAML:2.0:ac:classes:unspecified ~				
	< Back Next > Cancel				

5. Enter the settings for the application using the instructions from the vendor of your application.

You may not be required to provide information for every field.

6. Click Next.

O Add Application Wizard		×
SAML 2.0 Service Provider S Select the required Service Pro	Signing ovider signing options.	
If a trust relationship is required wi certificate so the IdP can verify sig	ith the Service Provider (SP) then import at least one gnatures.	e SP
SAML 2.0 Certificates		
SP Certificates: C	N=loadbalancer-9.siroe.com > Add Remove Cert Info	
Want Signed Au	uth Request 🔲 Want Signed Logout Request	
Sign Assertion to	o SP Sign Logout Response to SP	
	< Back Next >	Cancel

7. If required, choose the SAML 2.0 signing certificate.





Your Application Service Provider should provide one or more signing certificates, which may be included in the metadata export. You can import and remove certificates as required:

a. To add a certificate, click Add.

🧿 Open								×
$\leftarrow \rightarrow \cdot \cdot \uparrow \square \rightarrow$ This	PC > Local Disk (C:) > Temp				~ Ö	Search Temp		Q
Organize 👻 New folder							EE ▼ _ [. 0
A Ouick accorr	Name	Date modified	Туре	Size				
Desktop *	SAML2.0 Certificate.cer	13/02/2024 09:52	Security Certificate	1 KB				
👆 Downloads 🖈								
🗄 Documents 🖈								
E Pictures 🖈								
Authlogics Auth								
Log								
MMC								
System32								
💻 This PC								
3D Objects								
E Desktop								
Documents								
🕹 Downloads								
👌 Music								
Pictures								
Videos								
Local Disk (C:)								
File <u>n</u> ar	me: SAML2.0 Certificate.cer				~	Base64 Certif	icate (*.cer)	~
						<u>O</u> pen	Ca	incel

b. Browse to the signing certificate and click **Open**.

Note: Not all SAML applications require signing or certificates.

- 8. Configure the signing requirements for the application.
- 9. Click Next.

O Add Application Wizard		×
Authentication Options Select the requied authentical	tion options.	R
□Internal Authenticatio Logon technology:	Automatic Allow Deviceless MFA Enable Passwordless MFA	
Password reset via	Allow any user MFA technology	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel



- 10. You can specify the logon technology users must use to authenticate. The available options are:
 - Disabled
 - Automatic (MFA only)
 - Push
 - Grid
 - Phrase
 - One Time Code
 - Passkey
 - YubiKey OTP
 - **Password** (Active Directory password)
 - Windows Authentication (pass-through authentication)
 - Certificate

When an MFA license is installed, the default logon option is **Automatic** (MFA only). If only a PSM license is installed, the options are limited to **Password** and **Windows Authentication**, with **Password** being the default logon option.

Automatic determines the most appropriate MFA technology for a user to authenticate with. If a user is enabled for multiple MFA technologies, the application chooses the highest security MFA technology based on in-built hierarchy.

If you enable the **Allow any user MFA technology** option, users are allowed to authenticate using any MFA technology for which they are provisioned. If this option is not selected, the user must enter valid authentication credentials shown by the application only. Other MFA technology credentials that a user may be provisioned for do not work and they must provide the credentials display of the Self Service logon page.

Grid and Phrase authentication technologies both support Deviceless authentication, enable the **Allow Deviceless MFA** option to enable this support. If this is not enabled, then MFA is always required.

If you enable **Allow Passwordless MFA**, that enables passwordless logins. When disabled, users are required to enter a valid Active Directory password as well as their MFA credentials.



11. Click Next.

📀 Add App	lication Wiza	rd	×
Apply the Are you	e configuration I ready to apply	n? the settings?	
The Add / SAML 2.0 Click Next	Application Wiz App Applicatio to apply the co	ard has gathered all the information required to add the new My n. onfiguration changes.	,
	SAML 2.0 Su	mmary	
	Host:	https://idp.federationdemo.com/idp	
		IdP Signing Certificate	
		Copy Base64	
		< Back Next > 0	Cancel

12. Confirm the **Host** configuration information.

From this screen, you can export or copy the IdP signing certificate that the SAML application requires.

13. Click Next.

O Add Application Wizard			×
Add Application Configuration Authentication Server is updating the Applic	ation data.		
Update Progress			
Adding new Application Done			^
			~
	< <u>B</u> ack	<u>F</u> inish	Cancel





14. Click Finish.



Your application has now been configured.

5.6 Adding External Identities

MyID supports OpenID Connect External Identity Providers to be used as an authentication type for applications. To add an External Identity Provider:

1. In the MyID Management Console, highlight the External Identities node.

MyID Management Console							-		×
<u> </u>	lelp							-	. 8 ×
🗢 🏟 🙍 📰 🗟 🖬									
📔 MyID PSM & MFA	External Identities All OpenID Co	onnect External I	dentities			Act	tions		
Domains	Identity Name	Status	Type	Attribute	Claim	Ext	ernal Identities		
authlogicsdemo.com							Add External Identity		
> Authlogics Servers		I	There are no ite	ems to show in this view.		×.	Add External identity		
> Builtin						2	Refresh External Identities		
Company Groups							View		•
England							New Window from Here		
England									
> Germany							Export List		
> 🗊 Ireland						?	Help		
> 🗐 Italy									
> 📓 Scotland									
> 💼 Spain									
> 💼 Wales									
> 🗊 Zimbabwe									
> Managed Service Account									
> Microsoft Exchange Secur									
> Users									
> III Realms									
Applications External Identifier									
Boles									
Administrators									
> Concertors									
> ADIUS Users									
PSM Users									
> iii PSM Exclusion									
	11								



2. Click Add External Identity, in the Actions pane.



- 3. Click Next.
- Provide a descriptive Name for the external identity and choose a Provider.
 MyID External Identities supports providers of type:
 - Google
 See section 5.6.1, Creating an OpenID Connect External Identity (Google).
 - Microsoft

See section 5.6.2, Creating an OpenID Connect External Identity (Microsoft).

5. Set the External Identity to be **Enabled**.



5.6.1 Creating an OpenID Connect External Identity (Google)

📀 Add OpenID Connect External Identity Wizard							
External Identity Information General information for the new External Identity provider.							
Provide a name and select th reference purposes and can	ne External Identity provider type. The name is for internal be changed at any time.						
Name: Provider:	Google Identity Google ✓ ✓ Enabled						
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel					

- 1. Click Next.
- 2. Match the **OpenID Connect Claim** with the **Active Directory User Attribute** to link the accounts.

For example, you may want to match the user on the email address where the user's Google email address is stored in the user's Info field in the Active Directory.

🧿 Add Openl	D Connect External Identity Wizard X				
Account Mapping Map OpenID Connect to Active Directory					
An OpenID (User attribute	Connect Claim from the External Identity must be matched to an Active Directory e to link the accounts.				
	OpenID Connect Claim: emailaddress ✓ AD User Attribute: infol ✓				
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel				





Mombo	- Of	Dial.in	Envi	imment	Connin	
Pomoto	control	Diani	Dooktop So	nuinen. Profile	CO	пэ м.
Conorol	Address	Account	Desktop Se	Telephones	Omani	1VI+
Telepho Ho <u>m</u> e: <u>P</u> ager: Mo <u>b</u> ile: <u>F</u> ax:					<u>t</u> her t <u>h</u> er t <u>h</u> er	
<u>N</u> otes: authlogics	sdemo@gma	sil.com			-	<

3. Click Next.

4. Enter the **Client ID** and **Client Secret** retrieved from the Google Cloud API Credentials page.

O Add OpenID Connect Ext	ernal Identity Wizard	×
Google OAuth 2.0 Enter your details for Goo	gle OAuth 2.0.	C×
You need OAuth 2.0 creden and gain access to Google's Credentials page in the Goog	tials, including a client ID and client secret, to authenticat APIs. Create or view your client ID and client secret from gle API Console.	e users the
Client ID: Client Secret:	Bindit Internet & Britisti, apps.googleusercontent.com GOCCOPA-GeoCountCounter Countries (LDDa) Google Cloud API Credentials page More Information	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel



5. Click Next.

Add OpenID Connect External Identity Wizard	<
Apply the configuration? Are you ready to apply the settings?	1
The Add OpenID Connect External Identity Wizard has gathered all the information required to add the new External Identity.	
Click Next to apply the configuration changes.	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel	

- 6. Make a copy of the OpenID Connect client secret for integration with the calling application.
- 7. Click Next.

Add OpenID Connect External Identity Wizard Add External Identity Provider Configuration Authentication Server is updating the External Identity data.	×
Update Progress	9
Adding new External Identity Provider Done	^
	~
< <u>B</u> ack <u>Finish</u>	Cancel





8. Click Finish.

O MyID Management Console					-	
<u> </u>	Help					- 8 ×
🗢 🔿 🙍 📅 🗟 🖬						
NyID PSM & MFA	External Identities All OpenID Con	nnect External Identiti	es		Actions	
A Second Se	External Identities All OpenD Col Identity Name	nnect External Identiti Status Type Enabled Goo	s Attribute gle info	Claim http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/	Actions Exemal identities Identifies Identifies View New Window from Here Image: Sport Litt Image: Help	
. ,						



5.6.2 Creating an OpenID Connect External Identity (Microsoft)

🧿 Add OpenID Connect Ext	ernal Identity Wizard	×
External Identity Informa General information for the	tion e new External Identity provider.	d×
Provide a name and select t reference purposes and can	he External Identity provider type. The name is for internal be changed at any time.	
Name: Provider:	Microsoft Identity Microsoft ✓ ✓ Enabled	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel



- 1. Click Next.
- 2. Match the **OpenID Connect Claim** with the **Active Directory User Attribute** to link the accounts.

For example, you may want to match the user by their email address where the user's Microsoft Live email address is stored in the user's Web Page (wWWHomePage) field in AD.

Member	Of	Dial-in	Envi	ronment	Sessions
Remote of	control	Remote [Desktop Se	rvices Profile	COM+
General	Address	Account	Profile	Telephones	Organizatio
8	Administra	ator			
<u>F</u> irst name:				Initials:	
Last name:					
Di <u>s</u> play nar	ne:	Administrator			
<u>D</u> escription	:	Built-in accou	int for admi	nistering the co	omputer/doma
Offi <u>c</u> e:					
<u>T</u> elephone	number:				<u>O</u> ther
E- <u>m</u> ail:		Administrator	@authlogic	sdemo.com	
Web page:		authlogicsder	mo@outloo	k.com	Othe <u>r</u>



3. Click Next.

📀 Add OpenID Connect Ext	ernal Identity Wizard	×
Microsoft OAuth 2.0 Enter your details for Micro	osoft OAuth 2.0.	d×
The ID token introduced by Microsoft identity platform, w authentication. The ID token to get other information (clain application registered with th	DpenID Connect is issued by the authorization server, the then the client application requests one during user enables a client application to verify the identity of the user is) about them. ID tokens aren't issued by default for an e Microsoft identity platform.	and
Application ID: Client Secret:	5c006dfb-8db7-4a01-0167-fb3la0es744d #u00mer0efb4eg0er074.0m./hg0ef0efb4eg0er074.0m Microsoft Entra App registrations	
	More Information < Back Next > Ca	ancel

- 4. Enter the **Application ID** and **Client Secret** retrieved from the Microsoft Identity Platform.
- 5. Click Next.

Add OpenID Connect External Iden	tity Wizard	>
Apply the configuration? Are you ready to apply the settings?		d'
The Add OpenID Connect External Iden to add the new External Identity.	ntity Wizard has gathered all the	information required
Click Next to apply the configuration ch	anges.	
	< Back Ne	avt > Cancel

6. Make a copy of the OpenID Connect client secret for integration with the calling application.



7. Click Next.



8. Click Finish.

MyID Management Console						-	
O Eile Action View Window E	lelp						_ 8 ×
🗢 🌩 🗖 📰 📑 🖬 📷							
MyID PSM & MFA	External Identities All OpenID Co	nnect External l	dentities			Actions	
V 📴 Domains	Identity Name	Status	Type	Attribute	Claim	External Identities	
authlogicsdemo.com Authlogics Servers	G Google Identity	Enabled	Google	info	http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/	Add External Identity	
> Builtin	Microsoft Identity	Enabled	Microsoft	wWWHomePage	http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/	Refresh External Identities	
Company Groups						View	
✓						New Western from Use	,
England						New Window from Here	
> Germany						Export List	
> 💼 Ireland						12 Help	
> 📫 Italy							
> Scotland							
> 🖬 Wales							
> 🗊 Zimbabwe							
> Managed Service Account							
> Microsoft Exchange Secur							
> III Realms							
Applications							
External Identities							
V Koles							
> Coperators							
> 📫 RADIUS Users							
PSM Users							
> PSM Exclusion							
< >						_1	

Your Microsoft External Identity has now been configured and is ready for use.



5.7 Managing users

As MyID uses Active Directory as the user account database, the base user accounts may already exist in most cases. You can add Active Directory users one at a time or in bulk to the MyID MMC where they can be set up for various MFA technologies. They can be added from one or multiple OUs at a time as needed.

You can add External User accounts without the need for a full Active Directory Domain user account. These external accounts are stored within the forest root domain as LDAP person objects and cannot be used for Windows-based logons. A Realm must be created to contain an External User account.

You can use External User accounts together with the Windows Desktop Agent to add MFA to local Windows user accounts on both domain-joined and workgroup based systems.

Adding a user account to the MyID MMC allows the user to make use of the Self Service Portal and, if an MFA license is installed, they can be provisioned for Multi-Factor Authentication technologies.

You can carry out the following:

• Add a new realm.

See section 5.7.1, Adding a new realm.

View MFA and PSM account types.

See section 5.7.2, User account types – MFA or PSM.

- Add a MyID user account.
 See section 5.7.3, Adding a new MyID user account.
- Add a PSM user account. See section 5.7.4, Adding a new MyID PSM user account.
- Add an external MFA user account.

See section 5.7.5, Adding a new external MFA user account.

- Set up Grid Pattern authentication. See section 5.7.6, Setting up a user for Grid Pattern Authentication.
- Set up Phrase authentication.

See section 5.7.7, Setting up a user for Phrase authentication.

- Set up One Time Code authentication. See section *5.7.8*, *Setting up a user for One Time Code*.
- Set up YubiKey OTP. See section 5.7.9, Setting up a user for YubiKey OTP.
- View the MFA devices for a user. See section 5.7.10, Multi-Factor devices assigned to a user account.
- Assign temporary access codes using the MMC. See section 5.7.11, Assigning temporary access codes to a user (MMC).



• Assign temporary access codes using the web portal.

See section 5.7.12, Assigning temporary access codes to a user (Web Management Portal).

5.7.1 Adding a new realm

A realm is a container to store External User accounts. Each account within a realm must have a unique name. Realms can be nested – you can create a realm inside another realm for easier account management. You can rename realms and account names.

Note: A realm name may contain letters, numbers, dots, and underscores, but cannot be the same as an existing Active Directory domain name.

The realm name forms part of the user logon name. A user would enter their logon names as follows:

- Domain style: <realm>\<account>
- UPN style: <account>@<realm>

To add a new realm:

1. In the MyID Management Console, highlight the **Realms** node.

Q Authlogics Management Console			=	D X
O File Action View Window H	elp			_ 8 ×
🗢 🄿 🙇 🗊 🗟 🚺				
📙 Authlogics PSM & MFA	Realms External Realms	Ac	tions	
V Domains	There are no items to show in this view	Re	alms	^
 mathlogicsdemo.com Builtin 	There are no items to show in this view.	2	Add Realm	
> Company Groups		1	View	•
✓ ☑ Company Users			New Window from Here	
England			Referate	
> E France			, Keiresn	
> i Ireland			Export List	
> 🖬 Italy		2	Help	
> Scotland				
> D Spain				
> i Zimbabwe				
> Managed Service Account				
> Microsoft Exchange Security Securi				
Bealms				
V & Roles				
> 📫 Administrators				
> Operators				
RADIUS Users Password Policy Users				
> PSM Excluded Users				
< >				

2. Click Add Realm, in the Actions pane.

Add Realm	×
Enter the name of the new Realm.	OK
Note: Only Alphanumberic, dot and underscore characters are permitted.	Cancel
External01	

3. Enter the name of the new realm.



4. Click OK.

O Authlogics Management Console		_	
O File Action View Window H	elp		- 8 ×
← ⇒ 2 📰 🗟 🖬			
Authlogics PSM & MFA	Realms External Realms	Actions	
V 🔄 Domains	External01	Realms	
 mauthlogicsdemo.com Ruitin 		🐥 Add Realm	
> Company Groups		View	
Company Users			,
💼 England		New Window from Here	
> France		Q Refresh	
> Cermany		📑 Export List	
> in Italy		👔 Help	
> 📓 Scotland			
> 🖬 Spain			
> 📓 Wales			
> Zimbabwe			
Managed Service Account			
> 📋 Users			
✓ III Realms			
> External01			
V & Roles			
> Operators			
> 📫 RADIUS Users			
> Password Policy Users			
> PSM Excluded Users			
< >			

You have now added a realm. You can add more realms using the same method if required,

5.7.2 User account types – MFA or PSM

You can add different types of users based on the type of licenses installed. If an MFA license is installed, you can create a user account that can be provisioned for various MFA logon technologies and devices.

If only a PSM license is installed, you can create users with only PSM self-services features. PSM users can access the Self Service Portal to change or reset their password with One Time Codes. PSM users cannot be provisioned for use with Multi-Factor Authentication.

If an MFA license is added to an installation that previously only had a PSM license, existing users can immediately be provisioned for Multi-Factor Authentication.

Note: External User Accounts can be used with MFA only, as PSM requires an Active Directory user account.



5.7.3 Adding a new MyID user account

To add a new MyID user account:

1. In the MyID Management Console, expand the **Domains** and select the appropriate domain.

You can expand the list of OUs to see what accounts already exist.

MyID Management Console					-	• ×
O Eile Action View Window H	lelp					- 8 ×
🗢 🔿 🙍 📅 🗟 🖬						
📕 MyID PSM & MFA	authlogicsdemo.com A	II Authlogics User Accounts i	n container authlogicsdemo	.com	Actions	
V Domains	Account Name	First Name	Last Name	Description	authlogicsdemo.com	-
> 2 Authlogics Servers	& Administrator			Built-in account for administering the computer/do	OUs / Containers	
> 🛄 Builtin					All Users	
Company Groups Gompany Users					Q Search for User Accounts	
> Managed Service Account					🥏 Refresh Users	
> 📓 Microsoft Exchange Secu					🚴 Add User Account	
Users in child.authlogicsdemo.com					View	•
✓ 👭 Realms					New Window from Here	
External01					Refresh	
> (External Identities					Export List	
& Roles					Help	
< >	<			>]	

2. Click Add User Account, in the Actions pane.





3. Click Next.

O Add User Account Wizard	×
Add Active Directory users Add Active Directory accounts for use with MyID.	2
Active Directory user accounts in this list will be configured for use with MyID. To include user accounts from Active Directory Click Add. To remove user acco list tick the accounts and click Remove.	ounts from the
	Add Remove
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

4. To add existing Active Directory users click Add.

Note: This process does not create user accounts in the Active Directory Domain, it simply adds MyID metadata to an *existing* account. Ensure that the domain accounts exist before adding them to the MyID MMC.

Selec	t Users ×
Select this object type:	
Users	Object Types
From this location:	
authlogicsdemo.com	Locations
Enter the object names to select (<u>examples</u>):	Check Names
Advanced	OK Canad





5. Click Advanced.

Select this object type: Users Object Types From this location: authlogicsdemo.com Common Queries Incations Name: Starts with Description: Starts with Disabled accounts Find Now Disabled accounts Stop Non expiring password Stop Days since last logon: In Folder Charleen Njam. charleen njango Charleen Njam. charleen njango <					
Control Object Types From this location: authlogicsdemo.com Common Queries Locations Name: Starts with Description: Starts with Disabled accounts Find Now Disabled accounts Stop Non expiring password Stop Days since last logon: Search results: OK Charleen Nian charleen njango Charleen Nian charleen njango Charleen Shuck charlet.shuck@ Charleen Nian chelsey Fahren Cherlyn Rippin cherlynn tippin authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Rippin cherlyn durie@a authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Ningin cherlyn durie@a authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Ningin cherlyn with outhlogicsdemo Cherlyn Ningin cherlyn withlogicsdemo Cherlyn Khen cherlyn Idenie Names authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Khen cherlyn khenge authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Khen cherlyn khenge authlogicsdemo	jelect this object	type:		0	hiast Turas
rom this location: authlogicsdemo.com Locations Common Queries Name: Starts with ✓ □ Disabled accounts □ Disabled accounts □ Non expiring password Days since last logon: ✓ Search results: Charleen Njan charleen njango authlogicsdemo Charleen Njan charleen njango authlogicsdemo Charleyn Rippin cherlynn tippin authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Rippin cherlynn durie@a authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Rivei cherlyn klielwicz authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Rivei cherlyn klielwicz				<u>u</u>	bject Types
Ball inglescence com Locations Common Queries Image: Starts with Description: Starts with Disabled accounts Find Now Disabled accounts Stop Days since last logon: Image: Starts with Common expiring password Stop Days since last logon: Image: Starts with Charleen Nian Charleen njango Charleer Nian charleen njango Charleer Nian charleen njango Charleer Nian	rom this location	:			Landland
Common Queries Name: Starts with Description: Starts with Disabled accounts Find Now Disabled accounts Stop Days since last logon: Search results: OK Charleen Njan charleen njango Charleer Njan charleen njango Charleen Njan charleen njango Cherlym Rippin cherlym nippin authlogicsdemo Cherlym Rippin cherlym durie@a authlogicsdemo Cherlym Neine cherlym Authogicsdemo Cherlym Neine cherlym Authogicsdemo Cherlym Neine cherlym Authogicsdemo Cherlym Khen cherlym killogicsdemo Cherlym Kille, cherlym killogicsdemo Cherlym Kille, cherlym killogicsdemo Cherlym Kille, cherlym killogicsdemo	Juli liogicademo.e				Locauoris
Ngme: Starts with Description: Starts with Disabled accounts Find Now Disabled accounts Stop Non expiring password Stop Days since last logon: Search results: OK Charleen Njan charleen njango Cherlym Rippin chenkym rippin authlogicsdemo Cherlym Rippin chenkym rippin authlogicsdemo Cherlym Durie cherlym Alute@a Cherlym Nen cherlym Alute@a Cherlym Khen cherlym kikewicz Cherlym Khen cherlym kikewicz Cherlym Khen cherlym kikewicz Cherlym Khen authlogicsdemo Cherlym Khen authlogicsdemo Cherlym Khen authlogicsdemo	Common Querie	s			
Description: Starts with Disabled accounts Stop Non expiring password Stop Days since last logon: Search results: OK Charleen Nijan, charleen njango Cherlym Nippin, authlogicsdemo	N <u>a</u> me:	Starts with $$			<u>C</u> olumns
Disabled accounts Non expiring password Days since last logon: Stop OK Cancel Charlese Iski logon: Address In Folder Charleen Njan charleen njango authlogicsdemo Charley Fahre chelsey fahrend authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Rippin cherlynn rippin authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Rippin cherlynn rippin authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Rippin cherlynn durie@authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Nine cherlyn Authe@authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Kies cherlyn kies cherlyn kies cherlyn kies cherlyn kies dethylogicsdemo authlogicsdemo cherlyn Kies cherlyn kies dethylogicsdemo cherlyn kies dethylogicsdemo cherlyn kies	Description:	Starts with $$			Find <u>N</u> ow
Disaglet accounts Non expiring password Days since last logon: Search results: OK Cancel Mone expiring password Days since last logon: Search results: OK Cancel OK Cancel Charlot Shuck charlot shuck@ authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Rippin charlynn npipin. authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Purie cherlyn Authe@a authlogicsdemo Cherlyn When cherlyn kheresu authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Kher cherlyn kheresu authlogicsdemo	Disabled av				Stop
Days since last logon: Image: Construction of the system of the syst					- 1-1-
Days since last logon: Search results: Charles Nian charleen njango Charleen Nian Charley Fahre chelsey fahrend Cherlyn Rippin cherlynn.rippin authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Rippin cherlynn.rippin authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Nurie cherlyn Autie@a Cherlyn Khen charleen Cherlyn Khen cherlyn kiewicz Cherlyn Khen		ig password			~
Search results: Jame E-Mail Address In Folder Charleen Njan charleen njango authlogicsdemo Charlot Shuck charlot shuck@ authlogicsdemo Charlot Shuck charlot shuck@ authlogicsdemo Charlot Shuck charlot shuck@ authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Rippin cheniynn rippin authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Rippin cheniynn rippin authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Durie cherlyn durie@a authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Kine cherlyn kiksiewicz authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Kie cherlyn kiksiewicz authlogicsdemo	Days since las	t logon: 🗸 🗸 🗸			P
OK Cancel Jame E-Mail Address In Folder Charleen Njan charleen njango authlogicsdemo Charlot Shuck charlot shuck @ authlogicsdemo Charleren Njan charlot shuck @ authlogicsdemo Charleren Njane Judd @ authlogicsdemo authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Free. chelsey fahrend authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Rippin cherlyn hinpriprin authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Durie cherlyn Alure@a authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Khen cherlyn khensov authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Khen cherlyn kikeiwcz authlogicsdemo					
OK Cancel Iame E-Mail Address In Folder Charleen Njan charleen njango authlogicsdemo Charlot Shuck charlot shuck@ authlogicsdemo Charleen Njan charlot shuck@ authlogicsdemo Charleer Njan charlot shuck@ authlogicsdemo Charline Judd charline judd@ authlogicsdemo Cherlynn Rippin cherlynn rippin authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Nippin cherlyn nurie@ authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Nurie cherlyn nurie@ authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Khen cherlyn khensov authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Khen cherlyn klikeiwcz authlogicsdemo					
Gearch results: In Folder Iame E-Mail Address In Folder Charleen Njan charleen njango authlogicsdemo Charlot Shuck charlot shuck@ authlogicsdemo Charline Judd charmine judd@ authlogicsdemo Chelsey Fahre. chelsey fahrend authlogicsdemo Cherilynn Rippin cherlynn rippin authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Names cherlyn Authlogicsdemo authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Nurie cherlyn durle@a authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Nurie cherlyn Authleg@a authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Khen cherlyn khensov authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Khensov authlogicsdemo authlogicsdemo				OK	Cancel
Imme E-Mail Address In Folder Charleen Njan. charleen njango authlogicsdemo Charlot Shuck charlot shuck@ authlogicsdemo Charline Judd charmine judd@ authlogicsdemo Chelsey Fahre. chelsey fahrend authlogicsdemo Cherilynn Rippin cherlynn rippin authlogicsdemo Cheriny Durie cherlyn nure@a authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Nippin cherlyn nure@a authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Nippin cherlyn nure@a authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Nippin cherlyn nure@a authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Khen cherlyn khensov authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Khen cherlyn klikeiwicz authlogicsdemo	jearch res <u>u</u> lts:				
Charleen Njan charleen njango authlogicsdemo Charlot Shuck charlot shuck@ authlogicsdemo Charmine Judd charmine judd@ authlogicsdemo Cheley Fahre chelsey fahrend authlogicsdemo Cherilynn Rippin cherilynn rippin authlogicsdemo Cherin Hanners cherin hanners authlogicsdemo Cherin Nine chertyn durle@a authlogicsdemo Chertyn Khen chertyn khensov authlogicsdemo	ame	E-Mail Address	In Folder		
Charlot Shuck charlot shuck @ authlogicsdemo Charmine Judd charmine judd@ authlogicsdemo Cheley Fahre. chelsey fahrend authlogicsdemo Cheriyn Rippin chenlymn.rippin authlogicsdemo Cherin Hanners cherin hanners authlogicsdemo Cheriyn Durie cherlym.khensov authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Khen cherlym.khensov authlogicsdemo	Charleen Njan.	charleen njango	authlogicsdemo		
Chamine Juda chamine juda@ autrilogicsdemo Chelsey Fahre chelsey fahrend authilogicsdemo Cheriyn Rippin cheniynn rippin authilogicsdemo Cheriyn Durie cherlyn durie@a authilogicsdemo Cherlyn Khen cherlyn khensov authilogicsdemo Cherlyn Khen cherlyn khensov authilogicsdemo	Charlot Shuck	charlot.shuck@	authlogicsdemo		
Cherilyn Rippin cherilynn rippin authlogicsdemo Cherinn Rippin cherilynn rippin authlogicsdemo Cherinn Hanners cherinn hanners authlogicsdemo Cherinn Khen cherlyn khensov authlogicsdemo Cherve Liskie cherve Liskiewicz authlogicsdemo	Challeav Eabra	chaimine.judd@	authiogicsdemo		
Cherin Hanners cherin hanners authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Durie cherlyn durie@a authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Khen cherlyn khensov authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Liskie cherve läskiewicz authlogicsdemo	Cherilynn Rippi	n cherilynn rippin	authlogicsdemo		
Cherlyn Durie cherlyn durie@a authlogicsdemo Cherlyn Khen cherlyn khensov authlogicsdemo Cherve Liskie cherve liskiewicz authlogicsdemo	Cherin Hanners	s cherin.hanners	authlogicsdemo		
Cherlyn Khen cherlyn khensov authlogicsdemo Cherve Liskie cherve liskiewicz authlogicsdemo	Cherlyn Durie	cherlyn.durie@a	authlogicsdemo		
Cherve Liskie cherve liskiewicz authlogicsdemo	Cherlyn Khen	. cherlyn.khensov	authlogicsdemo		

- 6. Click Find Now.
- 7. Select the required users from Active Directory and click OK.

Select Users	×
Select this object type:	
Users	Object Types
From this location:	_
authlogicsdemo.com	Locations
Enter the object names to select (<u>examples</u>):	
; Clarissa Hirschberg (clarissa.hirschberg@authlogicsdemo.com); Clarisse Grillo (clarisse.grillo@authlogicsdemo.com); Clarita Cecchi (clarita.cecchi@authlogicsdemo.com) V	<u>C</u> heck Names
Advanced OK	Cancel



8. Click **OK**.

To remove accounts from the list, check the box next to the name and click Remove.

📀 Add User Account Wizard	×
Add Active Directory users Add Active Directory accounts for use with	h MyID.
Active Directory user accounts in this list will To include user accounts from Active Director list tick the accounts and click Remove.	be configured for use with MyID. ory Click Add. To remove user accounts from the
AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Becky Shand AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Belinda Coom AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Belinda Ceom AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Bellina Zehrin AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Bemardina W AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Bemardine Ile AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Bemetta Curri AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Berry Mesko (<	ro (becky.shandro@autl ∧ iey (belinda.coomey@au izar (bellanca.chiszar@a ig (bellina.zehring@authl /eems (bemardina.weem ir (bemardine.iler@authlk ington (bemetta.curringtk (berry.mesko@authlogic ♥ > Remove
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel

9. Click Next.

📀 Add User Ac	count Wizard					×
Account Optio General opt	ns ions for the new	user account.				8
The account o By default use Accou	ptions specified I r accounts are er unt options Account is disab Mobile phone pr	here will apply to r nabled from the d oled	new user according to the second s	ounts creat	ed by this w ot expire.	vizard.
Vali	d from: 01	November 2024			Always	
Vali	d to: 01	November 2024			🗹 Always	
			< Back	Ne	ext >	Cancel

10. Set the account options.

Account options determine the user's initial state. Accounts can be given the start and end validity dates and can be created as disabled accounts for later use.

The mobile phone privacy setting can also be specified.



11. Click Next.

O Add User Account Wizard			×
Passwordless Authentication Passwordless authentication options for the ne	ew user account	t.	2
The Passwordless authentication options options created using this wizard.	s specified here	will apply to new a	accounts
 Enable FIDO Passkey Authentica Enable Push Authentication Require Biometric Seed in Auther 	ation nticator App		
	< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

12. Choose whether the users are enabled for FIDO and/or Mobile Push authentication.

13. Click Next.

📀 Add User Account Wizard	×
FIDO usage instruction email FIDO usage instructions can be emaild to the user using an HTML template.	8
 Don't output user details Email user details Send to Email Addresses: Use Secondary Email Address if available Email HTML Template Path: C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\Fidol 	D
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel



14. Choose if or how the users receive their welcome email.

The welcome email contains instructions on how to set up their device for FIDO and Mobile Push based on your selection above.

If a single user is selected, you can specify the email address to deliver the email to.

When adding multiple users, the user's email address is retrieved from Active Directory or the alternate email address field and sent to them automatically.

15. Click Next.

Q Add User Account Wizard	×
Apply the configuration? Are you ready to apply the user account changes to the directory?	8
The Add User Account Wizard has gathered all the information required to configure the accounts.	euser
Click Next to apply the configuration changes.	
< Back Next >	Cancel



16. Click Next.

O Add User Account Wizard	×
Directory update The directory is being updated with the new user account details.	8
Update Progress	
Sending email to "beny.mesko@authlogicsdemo.com" Sent. Done. - Adding user account authlogicsdemo.com\bertina.carranza (bertina.carranza@authlogicsdemo.com) Sending email to "bertina.carranza@authlogicsdemo.com" Sent. Sending email to "bertina.carranza@authlogicsdemo.com" Sent. Done.	^
	~
< <u>B</u> ack <u>Finish</u>	Cancel

The new user accounts have been created.

17. Click Finish.

O MyID Management Console					-	- 🗆 X
File Action View Window H	ieln					- 8 ×
MyID PSM & MFA	authlogicsdemo.com A	II Authlogics User Acc	ounts in container authlogicso	lemo.com	Actions	
authlogicsdemo.com al Authlogics Servers	Account Name	First Name	Last Name	Description Built-in account for administering the computer/do	OUs / Containers	-
> Builtin > 👔 Company Groups > 👔 Company Users	& belinda.coomey & belianca.chiszar	Belinda Bellanca	Coomey Chiszar		All Users Search for User Accounts	
 Managed Service Account Microsoft Exchange Secur Users 	& bellina.zehring & bernardina.weems & bernardine.iler	Bellina Bernardina Bernardine	Zehring Weems Iler		Refresh Users Add User Account	
> in child.authlogicsdemo.com V III Realms	bernetta.currington	Bernetta Berry	Currington Mesko		View New Window from Here	•
Applications Applications Applications	obertina.carranza	Bertina	Carranza		Refresh Export List	
< >>	<			>		



5.7.4 Adding a new MyID PSM user account

PSM user accounts can be manually added if required, however PSM users automatically appear in the MMC when a user changes their password or logs onto the Self Service Portal.

1. In the MyID Management Console, expand the **Domains** and select the appropriate domain.

You can expand the list of OUs to see what accounts already exist.

C Ele deton Yeew Workew Help	O MyID Management Console						-	o x
Company Derives	<u> </u>	<u>H</u> elp						- 8 ×
Instruction of the second sec	🗢 🔿 🙍 📅 🗟 🖬							
 Commanies Actuant Name First Name Last Name Description Company Groups Company	MyID PSM	England All PSM User	Accounts in container Eng	land			Actions	
 • utblogicsdema.com • utblogicsdema.com	Domains	Account Name	First Name	Last Name	Description		England	
Company lines Compan	Authlogicsdemo.com Authlogics Servers			There are no items to show in t	p		C Search for User Accounts	
 Add PSM User Account Togland Togl	> Builtin			There are no items to show in t	iis view.		Refresh Users	
 ↓ Company Users ↓	> 📓 Company Groups						Add DSM Liter Account	
 Ingland Ingland Ingland Ingland Ingland Ingland Ingland Ingland Ingland Ingland Ingland Ingland Ingland Ingland Ingland Ingland Ingland Ingland <liingland< td=""><td>✓</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>Add PSIVI OSEF ACCOUNT</td><td></td></liingland<>	✓						Add PSIVI OSEF ACCOUNT	
 I france <lii france<="" li=""> I france I france<!--</td--><td>England</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>View</td><td>•</td></lii>	England						View	•
c Letranal identifies c Applications c X	> France						New Window from Here	
 Jestim Jestim	Germany						Refresh	
 Softmad Softmad	> a Italy						🔿 Export List	
Applications Model Series Roles C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C	> 📓 Scotland						Help	
Vestion Sector Account Sector Acc	> 🛋 Spain							
Ambabwe > Image Service Account > Image Service Acc	> 🖬 Wales							
 > ■ Manages Serve Account > ■ Other Serve > ■ Roles 	> Zimbabwe							
C > C > C > C > C > C > C > C > C > C	Misrosoft Exchange Service Account							
 Signal Autoblogications com Dipoperations Dipoperations Dipoperations Roles 	> Users							
Complexations Second Seco	> A child.authlogicsdemo.com							
 > for External Identities > Roles < < <!--</td--><td>> 📑 Applications</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td>	> 📑 Applications							
Roles	> 🖉 External Identities							
< >> <	> 🍇 Roles							
< >> <								
< >> <								
< >> <								
< >> <								
< >> <								
< >> <								
< >> <								
< >> <								
c >> c								
	< >	<				>		

2. Click Add PSM User Account, in the Actions pane.





3. Click Next.

O Add PSM User Account Wizard	×
Add Active Directory users Add Active Directory accounts for use with MyID.	8
Active Directory user accounts in this list will be configured for use with MyID. To include user accounts from Active Directory Click Add. To remove user accounts fi list tick the accounts and click Remove.	om the
Add Remov	e
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

4. To add existing Active Directory users, click Add.

Note: This process does not create user accounts in the Active Directory Domain, it simply adds MyID metadata to an *existing* account. Ensure that the domain accounts exist before adding them to the MyID MMC.

S	elect Users ×
Select this object type:	
Users	Object Types
From this location:	
authlogicsdemo.com	Locations
Enter the object names to select (<u>examp</u>	<u>les):</u> Check Names
Advanced	OK Cancel





5. Click Advanced.

Select this object type:			
Users		Object	Types
rom this location:			
England		<u>L</u> oca	tions
Common Queries			
Name: Starts with	×		<u>C</u> olumns
Description: Starts with	~		Find <u>N</u> ow
Disabled accounts			Stop
Non expiring password			
Days since last logon:	~		?
Days since last logon:	~	ОК	Cancel
Days since last logon:	 ✓ E-Mail Address 	OK In Folder	Cancel

- 6. Click Find Now.
- 7. Select the required users from Active Directory and click OK.

Select Users		×
Select this object type:		Object Types
From this location: England]	Locations
Enter the object names to select (<u>examples</u>): Arty Uzdygan (arty.uzdygan@authlogicsdemo.com); Athana Grienbahar (sthana grienbahar@authlogicsdemo.com);	m);	Check Names
Auberta Crisco (auberta.crisco@authloqicsdemo.com)	×	
<u>A</u> dvanced	OK	Cancel


8. Click OK.

To remove accounts from the list, check the box next to the name and click Remove.

O Add PSM User Account Wizard		×
Add Active Directory users Add Active Directory accounts for use wi	th MyID.	8
Active Directory user accounts in this list wil To include user accounts from Active Direct list tick the accounts and click Remove.	I be configured for use with N tory Click Add. To remove us	ΛyID. er accounts from the
AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Adrianna Car AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Ame Threats AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Anny Laraso AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Arabela War AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Ardenia Ruc AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Arduene Feig AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Ardy Uzdygar AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Athene Gries	nclini (adrianna.canclini@ (ame.threats@authlogic: n (anny.larason@authlog man (arabela.waman@a hti (ardenia.ruchti@authlk enbaum (arluene.feigenb) (arly.uzdygan@authlogi haber (athene.grieshabe)	Add Remove
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ex	kt > Cancel

Q Add PSM User Account Wizard	×
Apply the configuration? Are you ready to apply the user account changes to the directory?	8
The Add PSM User Account Wizard has gathered all the information required to configu user accounts.	ire the
Click Next to apply the configuration changes.	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel



10. Click Next.

📀 Add PSM User Account Wizard	×
Directory update The directory is being updated with the new user account details.	2
Update Progress	
(arluene feigenbaum@authlogicsdemo.com) Done. - Adding user account authlogicsdemo.com\arly.uzdygan (arly.uzdygan@authlogicsdemo.com) Done. - Adding user account authlogicsdemo.com\athene.grieshaber (athene.grieshaber@authlogicsdemo.com\ Done. - Adding user account authlogicsdemo.com\auberta.crisco (auberta.crisco@authlogicsdemo.com\ Done. - Adding user account authlogicsdemo.com\bettine.shepeard (bettine.shepeard@authlogicsdemo.com) Done. The Add PSM User Account Wizard is complete.	~
< <u>B</u> ack <u>F</u>inish	Cancel

The new user accounts have been created.

11. Click Finish.

C File Actions Image: Series Mindow Help - Imadd Series Mindow Help <th>×</th>	×
Image: Second	A ×
MyD FX England Actions > 30 Autholgics Servers Advinna.canclini Advinna.canclini Advinna.canclini England > 30 Buthingics Genorgy Servers	
→ Buthlogicadema.com Account Name First Name Last Name Description England > Buthlogics Servers 3 adriana.canclini Adriana Carclini Company Groups Company Groups Company Groups Service for User Accounts > Buthin 3 amethreads Ame Threats Company Groups Refresh User > Company Groups 5 and Anny Larason Second Tores Add PSM User Accounts > Socomy Users 5 andersauchti Ardenia Ruchti View > Socomy Users 5 andersauchti Ardenia Ruchti	_
> ⊇ Authologic Servers & adianna.canclini Adianna Canclini > ⊇ Buithin & ame.threats Ame Threats > ⊇ Company Groups & anny.harason Anny Larason > ⊇ Company Groups & anny.harason Anny Larason > ⊇ Company Groups & anderia.nuchti Ardenia Warman > ⊇ England & aderia.nuchti Ardenia Purchti > ⊇ France & advers/regroupsum Ardenia Purchti > ⊇ Germany & advers/regroupsum Ardenia Purchti > ⊇ Germany & advers/regroupsum Ardenia Reinshurti	-
Simultime & met.Intrests Ame Threats # Refresh Uses Simultime & anny-intrests Anny Larson & Add PSM User Simultime & andetaxeman Azbela Warman & Add PSM User Account Simultime & andetaxeman Azbela Warman View Simultime & andersize Ruchti View Simultime & andersize Ruchti View Simultime & andersize Ruchti New Window from Here Simultime & andersize Add PSM User Account New Window from Here Simultime & andersize Add PSM User Account New Window from Here Simultime & andersize Add PSM User Account New Window from Here	
> all Company Groups & anity adabutin Anity Lation > all Company Users & andelexawman Andelex S England & anderina unchti Ardenia > all Finder & anderina unchti Ruchti > all Finder & anderina unchti Ruchti > all Finder & anderina unchti Ruchti > all Gemany & anderina unchti Ardenia > all Gemany & anderina unchti Ardenia > all Gemany & anderina unchti Ardenia	
Image: Second	
Sign France § arluene_feigenbaum Arluene Feigenbaum New Window from Here Sign Germany § arluurdiyan Atly Uzdyan Sign Germany § arluene/seigenbaum Atly Uzdyan	•
Germany G	
> I reland Sathene griesbaher Athene Griesbaher	
Billion Decision Contraction Contraction	
Solution () Solution () Autoria Chico () Solution ()	
> Spain Image Service Image Service > 2 Zmbabre > manage Service Account > 3 Microsoft Exchange Secure > manage Service Account > 4 Microsoft Exchange Secure > manage Service Account > 4 Microsoft Exchange Secure > manage Service Account > 5 Microsoft Exchange Secure > manage Service Account > 6 Microsoft Exchange Secure > manage Service Account > 7 Applications > manage Service Account > 9 Microsoft Exchange Secure > manage Service Account > 10 Applications > management > 10 Applications > management > 10 Applications > management > 10 Applications > management <t< td=""><td></td></t<>	





5.7.5 Adding a new external MFA user account

1. In the MyID Management Console, expand the **Realms** and select the appropriate realm.

MyID Management Console						- 🗆 ×
Eile Action View Window E	Help					- 8 ×
🗢 🏟 🙍 📅 🗟 🖬 👘						
MyID PSM & MFA	External01 All User Acc	ounts in the Realm			Actions	
Domains	Account Name	First Name	Last Name	Description	External01	-
> m authogicsdemo.com		The	e are no items to show in this	view.	Q Search for User Accou	nts
✓ III Realms					🤹 Refresh Users	
External01					👶 Add MFA User Accour	ıt
> (- External Identities					Add Realm	
& Roles					View	•
					New Window from He	re
					🗙 Delete	
					🛒 Rename	
					Refresh	
					📑 Export List	
					👔 Help	
					<u> </u>	

2. Click Add MFA User Account, in the Actions pane.





3. Click Next.

📀 Add MFA User Account	×			
Account Details Account information for	2			
Enter the account name, f The account name is requ	irst name and last name ired, the other fields are	e etc for the n e optional.	ew user account.	
Account name:	johnd			
First name:	John	Last name:	Doe	
UPN:	johnd@external01			
Email:	john@doe.com			
Mobile Phone:	+44 780 555 1234			
		< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

4. Enter the details for the new user account.

Only the **Account name** is required, all other fields are optional.

The UPN is automatically generated based on the **Realm** and **Account name**; however, it may be manually edited as needed.

📀 Add N	MFA User Accou	nt Wizard	×
Accou Gen	nt Options eral options for the	e new user account.	8
The ac By defa	Account options spe	cified here will apply to new user accounts created by this wiza are enabled from the date of creation and do not expire.	rd.
	Account is	s disabled	
	Valid from:	08 February 2024	
	Valid to:	08 February 2024 📃 🗸 Always	
		< <u>B</u> ack <u>Next</u> >	Cancel



6. Set the account options.

Account options determine the user's initial state. Accounts can be given the start and end validity dates and can be created as disabled accounts for later use.

7. Click Next.

O Add MFA User Account Wizard	×
Passwordless Authentication Passwordless authentication options for the new user account.	
The Passwordless authentication options options specified here will apply to new account created using this wizard.	S
 Enable FIDO Passkey Authentication Enable Push Authentication Require Biometric Seed in Authenticator App 	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Ca	ncel

8. Choose whether to enable the users for FIDO and/or Mobile Push authentication.

At this stage, you can force Mobile App users to provide Biometric information as part of the authentication process.

📀 Add M	FA User Account Wizard	×
FIDO us FIDO	age instruction email usage instructions can be emaild to the user using an HTML template.	8
	 Don't output user details Email user details Send to Email Addresses: john@doe.com Use Secondary Email Address if available Email HTML Template Path: C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\Fidc 	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > C	Cancel



10. Choose if or how the users receive their welcome email.

The welcome email contains instructions on how to set up their device for FIDO and Mobile Push based on your selection above.

If a single user is selected, you can specify the email address to deliver the email to.

When adding multiple users, the user's email address is retrieved from Active Directory or the alternate email address field and sent to them automatically.

The appropriate FIDO and PUSH HTML template files can be selected to use for the email.

O Add MFA User Account Wizard	×
Apply the configuration? Are you ready to apply the user account changes to the directory?	
The Add MFA User Account Wizard has gathered all the information required to configure user accounts.	the
Click Next to apply the configuration changes.	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Ca	ancel



12. Click Next.

📀 Add MFA User Account Wizard			×
Directory update The directory is being updated with the new u	iser account deta	is.	2
Update Progress			
- Adding user account			^
			~
	< Back	Finish	Cancel

The new user account is created.

13. Click Finish.

MyID Management Console					- 🗆 X
O Eile Action View Window	Help				- 8 ×
🗢 🏟 🙍 📅 🔒 🛛 🖬					
MyID PSM & MFA	External01 All User	Accounts in the Realm			Actions
V 📴 Domains	Account Name	First Name	Last Name	Description	External01
> m autniogicsdemo.com	& johnd	John	Doe		Q Search for User Accounts
✓ 🛄 Realms					🥏 Refresh Users
External01					🔉 Add MFA User Account
> (External Identities					Add Realm
& Roles					View
					New Window from Here
					🔀 Delete
					Rename
					Refresh
					Export List
					I Help
	<				>



5.7.6 Setting up a user for Grid Pattern Authentication

Once you have created a MyID user account, you can configure it for use with Grid Pattern Authentication.

- 1. In the MyID Management Console, either expand the **Domains** and select the appropriate OU, or expand the **Realms** and select the appropriate realm.
- 2. Select the user account (or accounts) for which you want to manage the Grid settings.

MyID Management Console						-	
Eile Action View Window E	jelp						_ 8 ×
🗢 🔿 🙍 📰 📑 🚺 📷							
MyID PSM & MFA	England All User Accou	ints in container Englai	nd			Actions	
Mythol PSM & MKA → Domains → Domains → Domains → Bathlogics Servers → Bathlogics Company Groups → Bathlogics Company Groups<	England All User Account Account Name addisma.candini annuality and an annuality annua	nte in container Engla First Name Adrianna Anny Arabela Ardenia Arduene Ardy Athene Auberta Bettine	nd Last Name Canclini Tureats Lasson Warman Ruchti Feigenbaum Udygan Grieshaber Crisco Shepeard	Description		Actions England Q: Search for User Accounts Q: Refeat Users Q: Add User Account View New Window from Here Q: Berech Q: Diable Q: User Account Management Q: One Time Code Management Q: One Time Code Management Q: Diable Properties Q: Help	,
< >	<				>		

 Click Grid Management, in the Actions pane, or from right-clicking the account (or accounts).





4. Click Next.

🥑 Grid User Management Wizard	×
Grid Pattern creation method What size and method do you wish to use to create a new Grid Pattern for the user?	
A new Pattem can be automatically generated or the administrator can manually specify a Pattem for the user. A simple or complex Pattem can be created using either a 6x6 or 8x8 grid.	
Manually Specified Pattern	
<u>A</u> utomatically Generate Pattern	
Generate complex Pattern	
Grid Size	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cance	4

5. Choose the Pattern provisioning method and grid size for the selected users.

Users can have random Patterns generated automatically or the administrator can choose to manually configure the user's information. If you are applying these settings to multiple accounts simultaneously, only the automatic option is available.

By default, MyID MFA generates a simple pattern for the user. Enable the **Generate complex Pattern** option for a more secure pattern.

🥑 Grid User Management Wizard	×
Grid user detail instruction email Grid usage instructions can be emaild to the user using an HTML template.	
Don't output Grid user details	
Send to Email Addresses	
ame.threats@authlogicsdemo.com	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel



7. Select the method used to distribute the Pattern and grid usage instructions to the user.

Auto-generated information can be emailed to the user. Additionally, if you provide manually specified settings, you can specify not to output any details; this option is not available for auto-generated details.

You can send the email to multiple addresses by entering multiple email addresses separated by a semi-colon (;).

- 8. Click Next.
- 9. If you are manually specifying a pattern:
 - a. Enter the required pattern.

🥑 Grid User Management Wizard	×
Create new Grid Pattern Click the boxes in the blank grid to create a r	new Pattern.
	fter entering the Pattern, click the Set button en enter the Pattern again to confirm. To start over click the Clear button. Set Clear rogress: urrent Pattern Length: 6 linimum Pattern Length: 6
	< Back Next > Cancel

b. Click Set.





c. Confirm the Pattern entered previously.

🥑 Grid User Management Wizard	×
Create new Grid Pattern Click the boxes in the blank grid to create a new Pattern.	
After entering the Patter then enter the Pattern To start over click the	em, click the Set button again to confirm. Clear button.
Set	<u>C</u> lear
The new Pattern has b	been confirmed successfully.
< <u>B</u> ack	Next > Cancel

If the patterns match, the displayed grid turns green. If the patterns do not match, the grid turns red.

d. Click **Clear** to re-enter the pattern or click **Next** to continue.

🦁 Grid User Management Wizard	×
Grid user options Configure the Grid settings for the user account.	
The following settings will be applied to the user account. These settings can be changed later on via the user account properties.	
Enable account for Grid Authentication	
User must change Pattern at next logon	
Pattern never expires	
Enable Multi-Factor Authentication	
Disable Deviceless	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cance	1



10. Configure the Grid pattern user options.

You can set a user's Pattern to expire the next time that they log in, forcing them to change the pattern. You can also set a user's Pattern to never expire.

In MFA deployments, you can enable and enforce the user account to use a Multi-Factor device. An MFA device must be registered with the user account, otherwise the challenge delivered through email or SMS/TEXT fails.

11. Click Next.

Grid Us Multi-Fa Selec	Grid User Management Wizard Multi-Factor Token Delivery Settings Select the delivery type to be used for Multi-Factor tokens.					
A Multi-F remotely (Real-Tir before th	actor token challenge c generated via the Authe me) or in advance (Pre-S ney expire.	an be delivered to a device via SMS or email or ca enticator App. SMS and email tokens can be sent ir end). Tokens sent in advance can be given a time	n be hstantly to live			
	Delivery Method:	No delivery / Authenticator App \sim				
	Queue Type:	Real-Time 🗸				
	Token Lifespan:	15 🚖 Minutes				
		< Back Next >	Cancel			

12. Select the delivery method for Multi-Factor tokens.

Ensure that the user has either an Email address or Mobile telephone number for the tokens to be delivered to, if you have chosen either of those methods for delivery.

Queue Type determines whether tokens are pre-sent or generated in Real-Time. When Queue Type is set to Pre-Send, an administrator must specify the Token Lifespan for these token types.

The **Enable remote seed for soft tokens** option requires that the remote seed value generated by the Authentication Server is configured on the MFA device registered with the user account, otherwise authentication fails. This value is automatically installed through the QR code in the device enrollment process.



13. Click Next.

🦁 Grid User Management Wizard	×
HTML Template Select a HTML file to be used as a template.	
An email will be sent to each user selected to be provisioned. The email will be based upon the HTML template specified.	
HTML Template Path: C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\GridUserTemplate.html	
<u>B</u> rowse	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel	

14. Specify the HTML Template Path to the automated notification letter or email.

This HTML file can be modified and customized for your organization. Each letter or email is customized for the user to contain their unique information by substituting HTML comment values in the template.

To locate a custom template click **Browse**.

🥑 Grid User Management Wizard	Х
Apply the configuration? Are you ready to apply the Grid user information to the directory?	
The Grid User Management Wizard has gathered all the information required to update the Grid user information in the directory.	
Click Next to apply the configuration changes.	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cance	I



16. Click Next.

🥑 Grid User Management Wizard	×
Directory update The user account is being updated with the new Grid user information.	
Update Progress	
 Provisioning the user account "ame threats" Done. Sending email to "ame threats@authlogicsdemo.com" Sent. 	^
The Grid User Management Wizard is complete.	
	~
< <u>B</u> ack <u>F</u>inish Ca	ancel

17. Click Finish.



5.7.7 Setting up a user for Phrase authentication

Once you have created a MyID user account, you can configure it for use with Phrase Pattern Authentication.

- 1. In the MyID Management Console, either expand the **Domains** and select the appropriate OU, or expand the **Realms** and select the appropriate realm.
- 2. Select the user account (or accounts) for which you want to manage the Phrase settings.

O MyID Management Console O Eile Action ⊻iew Window	Help					- 🗆 X
🗢 🏟 🙇 📰 🗟 🔟						
📕 MyID PSM & MFA	England All User Accou	nts in container Engla	nd		Actions	
MyD PSM & MAZ MyD PSM & MAZ MyD PSM & MAZ Statubiogication.com	England All Use Account Name Account Name additiona.canclini and an account of the additional and a strate and a strate and a strate and a strate and a strate and a strate and a strate and a strate and a strate and a strate and a strate and a strate and a strate and a strate and a strate and a strate and a strate and a strate and a strate and a strate and a strate and a strate and a strate an	nts in containef Engla First Name Adrianna Anne Anny Arabela Ardenia Arduene Artuene Auberta Bettime	nd Last Name Canclini Threats Larason Warman Ruchti Feigenbaum Uzdygan Griselaber Crisco Shepeard	Description	Actions England Image: Search for User Accounts Image: Search for User Account Image: Search for User Account View New Window from Here Image: Search for User Account Image: Search for User Account	
< >	<				>	

3. Click **Phrase Management**, in the **Actions** pane, or from right-clicking the account (or accounts).





4. Click Next.

🥘 Phrase Authentication User Management Wizard				
Memorable Answers creation method What method do you wish to use to create answers for the user?				
A new initial answer can be automatically selected or the administrator can manually specify answers for the user.				
 <u>Manually Specified Answers</u> <u>A</u>utomatically Generate Codeword Answer 				
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel				

5. Choose the provisioning method.

You can set a user to get a randomly generated Codeword answer, or the administrator can choose to manually configure the user's information. If multiple accounts were selected before starting the wizard, only the automatic option is available.



6. Click Next.

🥘 Phrase Authentication User Management Wizard	×
Phrase Authentication user detail instruction email Phrase usage instructions can be emaild to the user using an HTML template	
Send to Email Addresses:	
ame.threats@authlogicsdemo.com	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

Select the delivery method for Phrase settings and usage instructions.

Auto-generated information can be emailed to the user.

If you manually specified the settings, you can specify not to output any details – this option is not available for auto-generated details.

🕖 Phra	Phrase Authentication User Management Wizard		×
Memo Co	prable Answers mplete the answers to the question	ns which are specific to the user.	
Answ	er a minimum of 1 questions from th acters long. Note: All spaces will be	he list below. Each answer must be at least 6 e removed.	
Ques	ion: What is	Answer:	
your C	odeword	SecretWord	
		< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > C	ancel



8. To specify the pattern manually, enter answers for the questions ensuring that each answer is at least the minimum number of prescribed characters and that enough questions have been answered.

The Next button appears only when these conditions are satisfied.

9. Click Next.

Phrase Authentication User Management Wizard	×
Phrase Authentication user options Configure the Phrase Authentication settings for the user account.	
The following settings will be applied to the user account. These settings can be changed later on via the user account properties.	
Enable account for Phrase Authentication	
User must change answers at next logon	
Enable Multi-Factor Authentication	
Disable Deviceless	
Use full answer instead of One Time Code	
OTP Length: 3 Digits	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cance	I

10. Configure Phrase Authentication user options.

You can set up an account so that the next time the user logins with the account, the user is forced to change the answers at the next logon.

In MFA deployments, you can enable and enforce the user account to use a Multi-Factor device by selecting the Disable Deviceless option.

You can configure an account to require the user to enter the full answer instead of random letters from the answer.

Note: This is not meant to be used as a true password-based system and is disabled by default.

Set the OTC Length for the number of characters a user needs to provide from the predetermined answer.



11. Click Next.

🧐 Phrase Authentication User Management Wizard	×
HTML Template Select a HTML file to be used as a template.	
An email will be sent to each user selected to be provisioned. The email will be based upon the HTML template specified.	
HTML Template Path: C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\PhraseUserTemplate.html Browse	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel	

12. Specify the HTML Template Path to the automated notification letter or email.

This HTML file can be modified and customized for your organization. Each letter or email is customized for the user to contain their unique information by substituting HTML comment values in the template.

To locate a custom template click **Browse**.

Phrase Authentication User Management Wizard	×
Apply the configuration? Are you ready to apply the Phrase Authentication user information to the directory?	
The Phrase Authentication User Management Wizard has gathered all the information required to update the Phrase user information in the directory.	
Click Next to apply the configuration changes.	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cance	əl



14. Click Next.

Phrase Authentication User Management Wizard	×
Directory update The user account is being updated with the new Phrase Authentication user information	
Update Progress	
Provisioning the user account "ame.threats" Done. Sending email to "ame.threats@authlogicsdemo.com" Sent.	
The Phrase Authentication User Management Wizard is complete.	
~	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>F</u> inish Cancel	

The configuration changes are applied.

15. Click Finish.



5.7.8 Setting up a user for One Time Code

Once you have created a MyID user account, you can configure it for use with One Time Code.

- 1. In the MyID Management Console, either expand the **Domains** and select the appropriate OU, or expand the **Realms** and select the appropriate realm.
- 2. Select the user account (or accounts) for which you want to manage the One Time Code settings.

MyID Management Console File Action View Window H	ielp				-	- 5 ×
🗢 🔿 🙇 📰 🔒 📓 🖬						
NyID PSM & MFA	England All User Accou	nts in container Engla	nd		Actions	
Demain: Demain: Particular Servers Demain: Subtract Servers Demain: Subtract Servers Demain: Subtract Servers Demain: Subtract Servers Demain: Demain: Subtract Servers Demain: Demain: Subtract Servers Demain: Demain:	C substance of the second s	First Name Adrianna Anne Anny Arabela Ardenia Ardenia Ardenia Arduene Athene Auberta Bettine	Last Name Canclini Threats Larason Warman Ruchti Fegenbaum Urdygan Grietaber Crisco Shepeard	Description	England Crigand Search for User Accounts Refresh Users Mad User Account View New Window from Here Export Litt Help amethreats So Enable User Account Management Grid Management One Time Code Management Properties If Help	•

3. Click **One Time Code Management**, in the **Actions** pane, or from right-clicking the account (or accounts).





4. Click Next.

🥑 One Time Code User Management Wizard	×
Static PIN method What method do you wish to use to create a PIN for the user, if any?	
The users AD password can be used instead of a PIN or the administrator can manually specify a PIN. Alternatively, a PIN can be automatically generated or not required at all for OTP only validation.	
O Use AD password as PIN	
Manually Specified PIN	
<u>A</u> utomatically Generate PIN	
○ No PIN / Password required - OTP only	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cance	

5. Choose the Static PIN Method.

The following PIN options exist:

- Use AD Password as PIN The user's Active Directory password is used instead of a PIN.
- Manually Specified PIN The administrator manually specifies a PIN.

If multiple accounts were selected before starting the wizard, this option is not available.

- Automatically Generate PIN The PIN is automatically generated.
- No PIN / Password required OTP only The PIN is not required at all for OTP only validation.

This option is only available if you enabled it through Global settings.



6. Click Next.

🥑 One Time Code User Management Wizard	×
One Time Code user detail instruction email OTC usage instructions can be emaild to the user using an HTML template.	
O Don't output One Time Code user details	
Email One Time Code user details Send to Email Addresses:	
ame.threats@authlogicsdemo.com	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Can	cel

7. Select the delivery method for One Time Code settings and usage instructions.

Auto-generated information can be printed or emailed to the user.

If you manually specified the settings, you can specify not to output any details – this option is not available for auto-generated details.

- 8. Click Next.
- 9. If you are manually specifying the PIN, enter the user's PIN and confirm the PIN.

🥘 One Time Code User Management Wi	zard	\times
Create new static Personal Identifica Enable or Disable, and set a new PIN fo	ation Number (PIN) r the user account.	
Stricter security can be achieved by requiri OTP. The PIN can be entered before, after To require a user to use a PIN, enter a PIN Enter the new PIN: •••• Minimum PIN Length	ng a user to enter a static PIN together with their or in the middle of the OTP code. In both boxes. Re-enter new PIN: ••••• is 4 digits between 0 and 9.	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cance	I



10. Click Next.

🥘 One Time Code User Management Wizard	×
One Time Code user options Configure the One Time Code settings for the user account.	
The following settings will be applied to the user account. These settings can be changed later on via the user account properties.	
Enable account for One Time Code	
User must change PIN at next logon	
OTP Code Length: 6 Digits	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>Next</u> > Cancel	

11. Configure One Time Code user options.

You can set an account so that the next time the user logins with this account, the user is forced to change the PIN at the next logon.

Set the **OTP Code Length** to the number of characters long that you want the OTP code to be.

🕖 One Time Code User Manage	ment Wizard	×
Multi-Factor Token Delivery Select the delivery type to be u	Settings used for Multi-Factor tokens.	
A Multi-Factor token challenge ca remotely generated via the Auther (Real-Time) or in advance (Pre-Se before they expire.	an be delivered to a device via SMS or email or can be nticator App. SMS and email tokens can be sent instantly end). Tokens sent in advance can be given a time to live	
Delivery Method:	No delivery / Authenticator App 🗸 🗸	
Queue Type:	Real-Time 🗸	
Token Lifespan:	15 🚖 Minutes	
Codes / message:	1	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cance	el



13. Select the delivery method for Multi-Factor tokens.

Ensure that the user has either an Email address or Mobile telephone number for the tokens to be delivered to, if you have chosen either of those methods for delivery.

Queue Type determines whether tokens are pre-sent or generated in Real-Time. When Queue Type is set to Pre-Send, an administrator must specify the Token Lifespan for these token types.

The **Enable remote seed for soft tokens** option requires that the remote seed value generated by the Authentication Server is configured on the MFA device registered with the user account, otherwise authentication fails. This value is automatically installed through the QR code in the device enrollment process.

14. Click Next.

🥑 One Time Code User Management Wizard	×
HTML Template Select a HTML file to be used as a template.	
An email will be sent to each user selected to be provisioned. The email will be based upon the HTML template specified.	
HTML Template Path:	
<u>B</u> rowse	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel	

15. Specify the HTML Template Path to the automated notification letter or email.

This HTML file can be modified and customized for your organization. Each letter or email is customized for the user to contain their unique information by substituting HTML comment values in the template.

To locate a custom template click **Browse**.



16. Click Next.

🥑 One Time Code User Management Wizard	Х
Apply the configuration? Are you ready to apply the One Time Code user information to the directory?	
The One Time Code User Management Wizard has gathered all the information required to update the One Time Code user information in the directory. Click Next to apply the configuration changes.	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel	

17. Click Next.

🕅 One Time Code User Management Wisard	~
	^
Directory update	
The user account is being updated with the new One Time Code user information	vn.
Update Progress	
 Provisioning the user account "ame threats" Done. Sending email to "ame threats@authlogicsdemo.com" Sent. 	^
The One Time Code User Management Wizard is complete.	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>Finish</u>	Cancel

The configuration changes are applied.

18. Click Finish.



5.7.9 Setting up a user for YubiKey OTP

Once you have created a MyID user account, you can configure it for use with One Time Code.

- 1. In the MyID Management Console, either expand the **Domains** and select the appropriate OU, or expand the **Realms** and select the appropriate realm.
- 2. Select the user account (or accounts) for which you want to manage the YubiKey One Time Code settings.

MyID Management Console Eile Action View Window	<u>H</u> elp					_	– <i>8</i> ×
🗢 🏟 🙍 📅 🗟 🔟 📷							
MyID PSM & MFA	England All User Accou	nts in container Englar	ıd			Actions	
And Park & MrA Demains Demain	England All User Accou Account Name diatana cancini any Janason denia unchi di mong Janason di name agi enaberta di name fagi enaberta di name fagi enaberta di name fagi enaberta di name agi enabert	nts in container Englar First Name Adrianna Anny Arabela Ardenia Ardenia Ardune Auberta Bettine	d Last Name Cancini Threats Larason Ruchti Feigenbaum Uzdygan Griebaber Crisco Shepeard	Description		Actions England Cg. Search for User Accounts 2 Refreah Users 3 Add User Account View New Window from Here G Refreah 3 Eport Lit 3 Enable 5 Disable 3 User Account Management 6 Privas Management 9 Prose Time Code Management 9 YubiKKy OTP Management 9 YubiKKy OTP Management 9 Properties 1 Help	-
< >>	<				>]	

 Click YubiKey One Time Code Management, in the Actions pane, or from rightclicking the account (or accounts).





4. Click Next.

𝒴 YubiKey OTP User Management Wizard	×
Static PIN method What method do you wish to use to create a PIN for the user, if any?	
The users AD password can be used instead of a PIN or the administrator can manually specify a PIN. Altematively, a PIN can be automatically generated or not required at all for OTP only validation.	
O Manually Specified PIN	
○ <u>A</u> utomatically Generate PIN	
○ <u>N</u> o PIN / Password required - OTP only	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cance	I

5. Choose the Static PIN Method.

The following PIN options exist:

- Use AD Password as PIN The user's Active Directory password is used instead of a PIN.
- Manually Specified PIN The administrator manually specifies a PIN.
 If multiple accounts were selected before starting the wizard, this option is not available.
- Automatically Generate PIN The PIN is automatically generated.
- No PIN / Password required OTP only The PIN is not required at all for OTP only validation.

This option is available only if you enabled it through Global settings.



6. Click Next.

𝖅 YubiKey OTP User Management Wizard	Х
YubiKey OTP user detail instruction email YubiKey OTP usage instructions can be emaild to the user using an HTML template.	
Don't output YubiKey OTP user details Email YubiKey OTP user details Send to Email Addresses: ame.threats@authlogicsdemo.com	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Canc	el

7. Select the delivery method for One Time Code settings and usage instructions.

Auto-generated information can be printed or emailed to the user.

If you manually specified the settings, you can specify not to output any details – this option is not available for auto-generated details.

- 8. Click Next.
- 9. If you are manually specifying the PIN, enter the user's PIN and confirm the PIN.

YubiKey OTP	User Management Wizard	×
Create new st Enable or Dis	atic Personal Identification Number (PIN) sable, and set a new PIN for the user account.	
Stricter security OTP.The PIN c To require a use	can be achieved by requiring a user to enter a static PIN together with the an be entered before, after or in the middle of the OTP code. er to use a PIN, enter a PIN in both boxes. Enter the new PIN: erter the new PIN: erte	ir
	Minimum PIN Length is 4 digits between 0 and 9.	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Ca	incel



10. Click Next.

𝒴 YubiKey OTP User Management Wizard	\times
YubiKey OTP user options Configure the YubiKey OTP settings for the user account.	
The following settings will be applied to the user account. These settings can be changed later on via the user account properties. ☑ Enable account for YubiKey OTP ☑ User must change PIN at next logon	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel	

11. Configure YubiKey One Time Code user options.

You can set an account so that the next time the user logins with this account, the user is forced to change the PIN at the next logon.

YubiKey OTP User Management Wizard	Х
HTML Template Select a HTML file to be used as a template.	
An email will be sent to each user selected to be provisioned. The email will be based upon the HTML template specified.	
HTML Template Path: C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\YubiKeyOtpUserPINTempla	
<u>B</u> rowse	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel	



13. Specify the HTML Template Path to the automated notification letter or email.

This HTML file can be modified and customized for your organization. Each letter or email is customized for the user to contain their unique information by substituting HTML comment values in the template.

To locate a custom template click **Browse**.

14. Click Next.

YubiKey OTP User Management Wizard	×
Apply the configuration? Are you ready to apply the YubiKey OTP user information to the directory?	
The YubiKey OTP User Management Wizard has gathered all the information required to update the YubiKey OTP user information in the directory.	
Click Next to apply the configuration changes.	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel	

15. Click Next.

🛞 YubiKey OTP User Management Wizard	×
Directory update The user account is being updated with the new YubiKey OTP user information.	
Update Progress	
- Updating YubiKey OTP information for the user account "ame threats" Done.	~
The YubiKey OTP User Management Wizard is complete.	
	,
< <u>B</u> ack <u>F</u> inish Cano	el

16. Click Finish.



5.7.10 Multi-Factor devices assigned to a user account

Users can enroll their MFA device or devices through the self-service portal or through the MyID Windows Desktop Agent. You can view the devices assigned to the user by using the MyID MMC.

- 1. In the MyID Management Console, expand the **Domains** and select the appropriate OU and user account to manage.
- 2. Click Properties, in the Actions pane.
- 3. Select the Devices tab.

FIDO	Push	Grid	One Time	Code	YubiKey OTP
General	AD P	assword	Devices	Eme	rgency Override
Devices					
Device	Yub	ico YubiKey	- Black Yubico) YubiKey	device 🗸 🗸
Name:	Blac	k Yubico Yu	ubiKey device		
		Device Enab	bled		
Device	ID: vvcv	ijuvknllc			
Type:	Yubi	co YubiKey			
Registra	ation: Man	ual			
Last us	ed: 05 F	ebruary 202	4 15:10:41		
				[<u>R</u> emove
Authentic	ator App S	ecurity			
Req	uire Biome	tric Seed			

Each user can have up to ten Multi-Factor Authentication devices. You can view any device assigned to a user by selecting it as a **Device**.

You can enable or disable each device as needed. You may want to do this if the device is temporarily misplaced.

You can also enforce the user to provide biometrics when using access tokens that support biometric validation.



- 5.7.11 Assigning temporary access codes to a user (MMC)
 - 1. Ensure that **Allow Temporary Access Codes** is enabled on the global settings General tab.

For more information, see section 5.2.1, General tab.

- 2. In the MyID Management Console, either expand the **Domains** and select the appropriate OU, or expand the **Realms** and select the appropriate realm.
- 3. Select the user account (or accounts) that you want to manage.
- 4. Click **Properties**, in the **Actions** pane.
- 5. Select the **Temporary Access** tab.

ame.threats Properties	×						
General AD Password Devices Temporary Access FIDO Push							
Usage and Expiry							
 Expire after 3 logins or 22/03/2024 14:04:48 Expire after 3 logins 							
Expire after 22/03/2024 14:04:48							
Code Type							
Use Active Directory password							
Random Code Random Word Clear							
OK Cancel App	ly						





ame.threats Properties	×							
General AD Password Devices Temporary Access FIDO Push								
Usage and Expiry Enable Temporary Access Code Expire after 3 logins or 22/03/2024 14:04:48 Expire after 3 logins Expire after 22/03/2024 14:04:48								
Code Type Use Active Directory password Use static PIN / Password phosphonic Random Code Random Word Clear]							
OK Cancel App	ly							

6. Enable the Enable Temporary Access Code option.

Select when temporary access codes are automatically disabled. Options include at a specific date and time, after a specific number of uses or both; the default is both.

You can configure the user to utilize their existing Active Directory password as a temporary access code as it is something they should already know.

Alternatively, specify a PIN or a password for the user of at least six digits. To assist in choosing a PIN or password you can click the **Random Code** or **Random Word** buttons to create one for you.

7. Click Apply or OK to save the configured settings for the user account.



- 5.7.12 Assigning temporary access codes to a user (Web Management Portal)
 - 1. Ensure that **Allow Temporary Access Codes** is enabled on the global settings General tab.

For more information, see section 5.2.1, General tab.

- 2. Load the Web Management Portal and select the user account to manage.
- 3. Enable the Enable Temporary Access Code option.

🐮 🗖 📀 Web Management Portal 🛛 🗙	+						-	0	×
← C 🗈 https://server.authlogicsder	mo.com:14443/admin#/user/ame.threats	Aø	☆	Φ	£^≡	Ē	~~		•
	RESET PASSWORD							*	Q
	Password								0
	New password								•
	Confirm								
	Confirm password								+
	Reset								
	TEMPORARY ACCESS Image: Temporary Access Code Expiry Number of logins or time period Access Code Type Use static PIN / Password Code phosphonic Random Code Save								
									582
									~~

4. Select if the temporary access code expires after a certain number or logons, a period of time, or both.



5. You can configure the user to utilize their existing Active Directory password as a temporary access code as it is something they should already know.

Alternatively, specify a PIN or a password for the user of at least six digits. To assist in choosing a PIN or password you can click **Random Code** for a random temporary access code.

:	0 v	Veb Management Portal	x +						-		×
← C	icsdemo.com:14443/admin#/user/ame.threats RESET PASSWORD	Aø	☆	Φ	£≞	۵	~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~		୍ ଚ ବ		
	Password New password Confirm Confirm password Reset								4 4		
			TEMPORARY ACCESS Updated emergency override access successfully.					×			
			Enable Temporary Access Code Expiry Number of logins or time period ✓								
			Access Code Type Use static PIN / Password Code 4450140810								
			Random Code Save							-	63

6. Click Save.


5.8 Roles

The MyID Authentication Server provides administrators with the ability to assign rights to users for MyID administrative functions and product features. Users can be designated as Administrators and Operators.

MyID Management Console				-	\square ×
<u> </u>	lelp				_ 8 ×
🗢 🏟 📶 🖬 📓					
Pile Action Yeew Window E Image: Second Secon	Administrators All Acco Account Name § schin § schin, mas § Administrator	ounts in Role Domain authlogicsdemo.com authlogicsdemo.com	Email Administrator@authlogicsdemo.com	Actions Administrators • User Permission View Alert Recipients View View New Window from Here Bopot List Help	, I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I
PSM Exclusion					

Administrators can fully administer MyID using the MyID Management Console and can perform day-to-day operational functions using the Web Management Portal.

Operators can access the Web Management Portal, which provides day-to-day operational functions, but they do not have access to the MyID Management Console.

If you have MyID MFA, authorization through RADIUS can be restricted using the RADIUS Users role.

If you have MyID PSM and you do not want to protect every account with PSM, user accounts that should be protected by PSM can be specified using the PSM Users role.

Note: Active Directory groups are created automatically for Administrators and Operators and are assigned to the roles by default. For all other roles, an Active Directory group must be created manually first.

You can:

· Use groups with roles.

See section 5.8.1, Active Directory Group types for roles.

• Work with administrator roles.

See section 5.8.2, Administrator role views.

• Manage administrative roles.

See section 5.8.3, Managing administrative roles.

• Manage the role for PSM users.

See section 5.8.4, Managing the Password Security Management Users role.

• Manage the role for RADIUS users. See section 5.8.5, Managing the RADIUS Users role.





5.8.1 Active Directory Group types for roles

Both Global and Universal Security groups can be used with all MyID Roles. Group nesting is supported – groups may contain other groups.

In addition, both Global and Universal Distribution groups can be used with the MyID Administrators Role to allow people to receive administrative alerts, but not have administrative permissions. For more information, see section *5.8.2*, *Administrator role views*.

For multi-domain forests, the groups can be created in any domain in the forest. It is recommended that Universal groups are used in multi-domain forests so that Global Catalog servers can be contacted to check role membership, otherwise, Domain Controllers from other domains may need to be contacted, which can affect performance depending on the infrastructure.



5.8.2 Administrator role views

The Administrator Role is dual purpose and therefore has the following views:

- User Permissions View User accounts that have MyID Administrative permissions.
- Alert Recipients View Email addresses that should receive Admin Alerts.

To toggle these views:

1. In the MyID Management Console, under Roles, expand Administrators.

MyID Management Console Eile Action View Window E	jelp				- 🗆 X
Image: Second	Administrators All Ac Account Name & admin & admin, ms & Administrator	counts in Role. Domain authogicsdemo.com authlogicsdemo.com authlogicsdemo.com	Email Administrator@authlogicsdemo.com	Actions Administrators User Permission View Allet Recipients View Refersh Users View New Window from Here Epo tist Help	. 0 ×
External Identities Relate Administrators Oreators RoUtS Users PSM Exclusion					
< >>					

2. In the Actions pane, select the view that you want.

(*) Exaction Kew Window Help _ = ℓ (*) Exaction Kew Window Help _ = ℓ (*) MyD PSM & MFA Company Ker Window Help _ = ℓ (*) Statisficications of Example Score Administrator® authlogicsdemo.com Active Directory User Administrators (*) Statisficications Administrator authlogicsdemo.com Active Directory User Administrators (*) Statisficications Company Groups Administrator® authlogicsdemo.com Active Directory User Administrators (*) Minosoft Exchange Score Administrator® authlogicsdemo.com Active Directory User New Window from Here (*) Minosoft Exchange Score Statisfications (*) New Window from Here (*) (*) Dependentions Company Users (*) (*) (*) (*) (*) Dependentions (*) (*) (*) (*) (*) (*) (*) Dependentions (*) (*) (*) (*) (*) (*) (*) Dependentions (*) (*) (*) (*	O MyID Management Console						- 🗆 X
Image: Second Secon	Eile Action View Window	Help					- 8 ×
Memory Formation Administrators Administrators Administrators > 0 contains Email Type > 0 contains Email Type > 0 contains Administrator@authlogicsdemo.com Active Directory User > 0 contains Email Type > 0 contains Administrator@authlogicsdemo.com Active Directory User > 0 contains Administrator@authlogicsdemo.com Active Directory User > 0 contains Email Type > 0 containstrator Administrator@authlogicsdemo.com Active Directory User > 0 containstrator Administrator Authlogicsdemo.com Active Directory User > 0 containstrator 0 containstrator Active Directory User Ver > 0 containstrator 0 containstrator Active Directory User Ver > 0 containstrator 0 containstrator Active Directory User Ver > 0 containstrator 0 containstrator Active Directory User Ver > 0 containstrator 0 containstrator	🗢 🔿 🙋 🖬 🗟 🔟						
V Orbitality display Damain Enail Type Administrators > ■ Administrat	MyID PSM & MFA	Administrators Alert	Recipients in Role			Actions	
	MyD PSM & NFA MyD PSM MyD PSM	Administrators Alert 1 Recipient Name Administrator	Recipients in Role Domain authlogicsdemo.com	Email Administrator@authlogicsdemo.com	Type Active Directory User	Actions Administrators User Permission View • Alert Recipients View © Refresh Recipients View New Window from Here ● Sport Lit Image: Permission View	,
	< >>	<				>	

This allows you to determine the resultant set of users of that case.



This feature may be useful if your admin personnel have split role user accounts and need to use their admin user account to perform administrative tasks but need to receive Admin Alerts on a non-admin user account.

Administrative Permissions can only be assigned to Active Directory User Accounts through either direct membership of the MyID Administrators group, or by being a member of a nested **Security group** (Global or Universal). Permissions are not assigned to Active Directory Contacts or through membership of a Distribution Group. The existence of an email address on a user account or group has no effect.

Admin Alerts can be sent to Active Directory User Accounts, Contacts or Groups (Global or Universal, Security or Distribution) that have an email address configured. They can be direct members of the Authlogics Administrators group, or a member of a nested Security or Distribution group (Global or Universal). If a nested group does not have an email address configured on it, the members of the group are processed individually, including other nested groups. However, if a group does have an email address configured on it, the email address of the group is used, and the members of the group are ignored, leaving the email system (for example, Microsoft Exchange) to deliver the email to the group members.

To use split role user accounts for Admin Alerts, create a Distribution group in the Active Directory, add the non-admin user accounts to it, then add the group to the Authlogics Administrators group.

When using Microsoft Exchange, create a Mail Enabled Distribution group, add the nonadmin user accounts to it, then add the group to the Authlogics Administrators group. MyID then sends Admin Alerts to the group and not directly to the member.



5.8.3 Managing administrative roles

Role membership is managed through the corresponding Active Directory groups. These groups are created during the directory configuration and can be renamed and moved to different OUs as needed. You *must not* delete these groups.

Non-administrative roles are optional and the group filtering for the role can be enabled or disabled as needed.

Role members cannot be added and removed using the MyID Management Console – this must be done by editing the appropriate Windows group using either the Active Directory Users and Computers MMC, or the Local Users and Groups MMC.

Note: When assigning Active Directory groups to MyID administrative roles, the Active Directory groups must already exist in the domain.

To assign Active Directory groups to MyID administrative roles:

1. In the MyID Management Console, highlight the Roles node.







2. Click **Properties**, in the **Actions** pane.

Roles Properties	×
Administrative Roles PSM RADIUS	
Administrator Users Authlogics Administrators have full access to all system features and functionality. AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Authlogics Administrators Browse	
Operator Users Authlogics Operators only have limited administrative access via the Web Operator Portal.	
AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Authlogics Operators	
Browse	

3. To select administrators, click **Browse** in the Administrator Users section.

Select Group	×
Select this object type:	
Group	Object Types
From this location:	
Entire Directory	Locations
Enter the object name to select (<u>examples</u>):	
Authlogics Administrators	Check Names
Advanced OK	Cancel

4. Locate the Active Directory group.



5. Click OK.

Roles Properties	×
Administrative Roles PSM RADIUS	
Administrator Users Authlogics Administrators have full access to all system features	
and functionality. AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Authlogics Administrators	
Browse	
Operator Users	
Authlogics Operators only have limited administrative access via the Web Operator Portal.	
AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Authlogics Operators	
Browse	
OK Cancel Apply	

6. To select operators, click **Browse** in the Operator Users section.

Select Group		×
Select this object type:		
Group	<u>O</u> bjec	t Types
From this location:		
Entire Directory	Loc	ations
Enter the object name to select (<u>examples</u>):		
Authlogics Operators	Chec	k Names
<u>A</u> dvanced	OK	Cancel

- 7. Locate the Active Directory group.
- 8. Click OK.



5.8.4 Managing the Password Security Management Users role

To assign an Active Directory group to the MyID Password Security Management Users role:

1. In the MyID Management Console, highlight the Roles node.

MyID Management Console		- 0	×
O Eile Action View Window H	lelp		- 8 ×
🗢 🔿 🙍 📅 🔒 🚺 🖬			
MyID PSM & MEA	Rolos Authentication Server Roles	Actions	
V Domains	Administrator	Actions	
✓ ji authlogicsdemo.com	Operators	Roles	-
> 2 Authlogics Servers	RADIUS Users	View	•
> 🧾 Builtin	PSM Users	New Window from Here	
> Company Groups	PSM Exclusion	Refresh	
S Managed Service Account		Export List	
Microsoft Exchange Security		Bropertier	
Users		in properties	
> 🏨 Realms		M Help	
Applications			
Creaternal Identities			
Administrators			
> Operators			
> 📫 RADIUS Users			
> C PSM Users			
> PSM Exclusion			
< >			
	<u> </u>	,	

2. Click **Properties**, in the **Actions** pane.

Roles Properties			×
Administrative Roles	PSM RADIUS		
Administrator Users Authlogics Admi and functionality AUTHLOGICSD	nistrators have full an IEMO\Authlogics Ad	ccess to all system feat Iministrators Brow	tures
Operator Users Authlogics Opera the Web Operat	ators only have limite or Portal.	ed administrative acces	ss via
AUTHLOGICSL	ienio vautniogies Op	Brow	NSE
	OK	Cancel	<u>A</u> pply





3. Select the **PSM** tab.

Roles Properties			×		
Administrative Roles	PSM	RADIUS			
Password Security Management Users Password Security Management Users Enable Password Security Management Users group Provide PSM protection to members of the group only, otherwise, all enabled user accounts in the AD Forest will be protected.					
Remediation and	Alerts Exc	Browse			
Enable Rem	ediation	and Alerts Exclusion group			
Remediation and Alerts will not be actioned, however, real-time policy checks will still apply when a password is changed.					
Browse					
		OK Cancel App	bly		

4. Enable the Enable Password Security Management Users group option.

5. Click Browse.

Select Group		×
Select this object type:		01 T
From this location:		Object Types
Entire Directory		Locations
Enter the object name to select (examples):		
Authlogics PSM Users		<u>C</u> heck Names
<u>A</u> dvanced	ОК	Cancel

6. Locate the Active Directory Password Policy group.



7. Click OK.

Roles Properties	\times				
Administrative Roles PSM RADIUS					
Password Security Management Users Enable Password Security Management Users group Provide PSM protection to members of the group only, otherwise, all enabled user accounts in the AD Forest will be protected.					
AUTHLOGICSDEMO (Authlogics PSM Users Browse					
Remediation and Alerts Exclusion					
Enable Remediation and Alerts Exclusion group					
Remediation and Alerts will not be actioned, however, real-time policy checks will still apply when a password is changed.					
Browse					
OK Cancel Apply					

8. Click OK.

To view the members, in either the **Roles** node or the **PSM Users** node, in the Action pane, click **Refresh**.



5.8.5 Managing the RADIUS Users role

To assign an Active Directory group to the MyID RADIUS Users role:

Note: The Active Directory group must already exist in the domain. A default RADIUS group is *not* created during setup.

1. In the MyID Management Console, highlight the Roles node.

⊙ MyID Management Console	- D >	.
S Elle Action View Window Help	- 8	×
	[-
MyID P3M ok MMA Koles Autmentication server koles	Actions	
✓ authlogicsdemo.com	Roles	•
Authlogics Servers Applies lisers	View	•
> 🧰 Builtin 🔤 PSM Users	New Window from Here	
> 🗐 Company Groups 🧧 PSM Exclusion	Q Refresh	_
> Company Users	Evport List	
> Mintaged Service Account		-
Sers	Properties	
> 🛱 Realms	P Help	
Replications		
C External Identities		
Koles Advisitates		
Annumstatuts		
> A RADIUS Visers		
> iii PSM Users		
> 🧰 PSM Exclusion		

2. Click **Properties**, in the **Actions** pane.

Roles Properties	Х
Administrative Roles PSM RADIUS	
Administrator Users Authlogics Administrators have full access to all system features and functionality. AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Authlogics Administrators Browse	
Operator Users Authlogics Operators only have limited administrative access via the Web Operator Portal. AUTHLOGICSDEMO\Authlogics Operators	
Browse	
OK Cancel Apply	/





3. Select the RADIUS tab.

Roles Properties	×
Administrative Roles PSM Filters RADIUS	
RADIUS Users Group	
Enable RADIUS filtering	
Only members of the specified group are able to access resources via RADIUS if group filtering is enabled.	
Browse	
OK Cancel <u>Apply</u>	•

4. Enable the Enable RADIUS filtering option.

5. Click Browse.

Select Group	×
Select this object type:	
Group	Object Types
From this location:	
Entire Directory	Locations
Enter the object name to select (<u>examples</u>):	
Authlogics RADIUS Users	Check Names
<u>A</u> dvanced	OK Cancel

6. Locate the Active Directory RADIUS group.





7. Click OK.

Roles Properties					\times
Administrative Roles	PSM Filters	RADIUS			
RADIUS Users Gr	oup				
Enable RAD)IUS filtering				
Only members of via RADIUS if g	f the specified roup filtering is	group are a enabled.	able to acces	s resources	
Authlogics RAD	IUS Users				
			E	Browse	
		ОК	Cancel	<u>A</u> pply	,

8. Click OK.

To view the members, in either the **Roles** node or the **PSM Users** node, in the Action pane, click **Refresh**.



5.9 The Web Management Portal

The MyID Web Management Portal provides operational staff with an easy-to-use webbased interface to perform common administrative tasks. Members of the Operators Role may only use the Web Management Portal. The Web Management Portal UI is well suited to tablet and touch-based devices.

The Web Management Portal includes dashboards to provide a high-level overview of core Password Security and Multi-Factor Authentication events. The dashboard also provides administrators with the ability to generate reports.

•	♥ Web Management Portal × +				- 🗆	×
÷	→ C Not secure <u>https://server.a</u>	authlogicsdemo.com:14443/admin#/users			☆ 🛛 💿	:
(M	(Jip)	ິ administrator ∽	Î			
Sy	stem	sers				
	Dashboards ^ Password Security	search			authlogicsdemo.com 🗸	
	Multi-Factor Authentication	Account 👻	First name	Last Name		
	System Status	eda.delisle	Eda	Delisle		
	Reports	bettine.shepeard	Bettine	Shepeard		
	Users	auberta.crisco	Auberta	Crisco		
		athene.grieshaber	Athene	Grieshaber		
		arly.uzdygan	Arly	Uzdygan		
		arluene.feigenbaum	Arluene	Feigenbaum		
		ardenia.ruchti	Ardenia	Ruchti		
		arabela.warman	Arabela	Warman		
		anny.larason	Anny	Larason		

Day-to-day user management functions available through the Web Management Portal include:

- Viewing all MyID events for the selected user.
- Enabling or disabling an account.
- Unlocking an account.
- Updating a Mobile / Cellular phone number.
- Resetting user passwords.
- Configuring Temporary Access Codes.
- Viewing, enabling, disabling, and resyncing MFA devices.
- Configuring MFA settings.
- Resetting a Grid Pattern.
- · Resetting a Phrase answers.
- Resetting a One Time Code PIN.
- Verifying a One Time Code.
- Performing 2-Way-Identification.



The Web Management Portal does *not* allow the following actions:

- Modification of the global settings.
- Adding new user accounts.
- Provisioning MFA technologies.
- Changing the Pattern size.
- Changing logon times.

The Web Management Portal is compatible with multiple web browsers including Microsoft Edge, Google Chrome, Firefox, and Safari. Internet Explorer may function but is no longer recommended or supported.

This section contains information on:

- Accessing the portal.
 See section 5.9.1, Accessing the Web Management Portal.
- Using the portal.

See section 5.9.2, Using the Web Management Portal.

- Viewing user events. See section 5.9.3, Viewing all user events.
- Viewing and disabling devices. See section 5.9.4, Viewing and disabling devices for a user account.
- Removing devices. See section 5.9.5, *Removing a device from a user account*.

5.9.1 Accessing the Web Management Portal

The Web Management Portal is accessed using Forms-based authentication with MFA or passwords, or Windows-based authentication.

There is a start menu shortcut on the MyID server for easy access. Alternatively, you can use the following URL from any remote location:

https://<servername>:14443/admin

Where <servername> is the name of your MyID Authentication Server.

The portal can be accessed using HTTPS on port TCP:14443.

The installation process configures a self-signed SSL certificate for use with the MyID Authentication Server. You can replace this certificate with one from an internal or third-party trusted root when needed.





5.9.2 Using the Web Management Portal

When using the Web Management Portal, start by selecting the domain in the forest that you want to administer. If there is only a single domain then it is selected automatically.

To search for a particular user, or to narrow down the list of users, enter some search criteria in the Search box and press enter.

To make changes to a user account, click a user to view and edit the account details.

•	♥ Web Management Portal × +		-		×
←	→ C ON Not secure https://serv	ver.authlogicsdemo.com:14443/admin#/user/ame.threats	☆ 🛛	•	:
Sy	stem	Account Ame Threats (ame.threats)			^
	Dashboards ^ Password Security Multi-Factor Authentication System Status Reports Users	ACCOUNT DETAILS C Account is Disabled Account is Locked Out Mobile Number			
Us උ	er Account	Save			ļ
	Events				
	Devices				
	Pattern	RESET PASSWORD			
	One Time Code	Password			
	Two-Way ID	New password			
		Confirm			
		Confirm password			+

When you have finished making changes to the user account, click Save.

A notification at the top of the console displays if the update is successfully saved.

*	Web Management Portal × +		-	-		×
÷	→ C ONOT Secure https://server	r.authlogicsdemo.com:14443/admin#/user/ame.threats	☆		0	:
Sys	tem 🖌	Account Ame Threats (ame.threats)				^
	Dashboards ^					
	Password Security	ACCOUNT DETAILS				
	Multi-Factor Authentication					
	System Status	Updated user details successfully.		×		
	Reports	Account is Disabled				
	Users	Account is Locked Out				
Use	r	Mobile Number				
ኖ	Account					
	Events	Save				
	Devices					
	Pattern					
	One Time Code	RESET PASSWORD				
	Two-Way ID					
		Password				
		New password				-

A record of changes made to user accounts is kept in the MyID Server Application Event Log.



5.9.3 Viewing all user events

Every user-related event is registered in the Windows Events log on the MyID Authentication Server or Domain Controller that processed the request. In environments containing multiple MyID Authentication Servers and Domain Controllers, it can be challenging to locate the server containing the required log data.

The Web Management Portal Events view consolidates events from all servers into a single view for each user.

To view a user's events:

- 1. Select the user account for which you want to access events.
- 2. In the User section, click Events.

•	🔉 Web Management Portal 🛛 🗙 🕂			- 1		×
÷	→ C ONOT secure https://server.a	authlogics demo.com: 1444	3/admin#/user/ame.threats/events	☆ 🛛	0	:
Sys	tem	vents (ame.t	nreats)			
	Dashboards ^					
	Password Security	Last 7 Days		~		
	Multi-Factor Authentication	Created - Id	Masaaa	Computer		
	System Status		Message	Computer		
	Reports	2/13/2024 180 2:34:29 PM	The user account authlogicsdemo.com\ame.threats (ame.threats@authlogicsdemo.com) has been successfully updated.	server.authlogicsdemo.com		
	Users	2/13/2024 2:32:25 PM	The user account authlogicsdemo.com\ame.threats (ame.threats@authlogicsdemo.com) has been successfully updated.	server.authlogicsdemo.com		
Use	r Account	2/9/2024 9:46:47 AM	The user account authlogicsdemo.com\ame.threats (ame.threats@authlogicsdemo.com) has been successfully updated.	server.authlogicsdemo.com		
þ	Events	2/9/2024 9:46:47 AM	The YubiKey OTP PIN update for user account authlogicsdemo.com\ame.threats (ame.threats@authlogicsdemo.com) has completed successfully.	server.authlogicsdemo.com		
	Devices Pattern	2/9/2024 9:23:34 AM	The user account authlogicsdemo.com\ame.threats (ame.threats@authlogicsdemo.com) has been successfully updated.	server.authlogicsdemo.com		
	One Time Code Two-Way ID	2/9/2024 175 9:23:34 AM	The One Time Code PIN update for user account authlogicsdemo.com\ame.threats (ame.threats@authlogicsdemo.com) has completed successfully.	server.authlogicsdemo.com		
		2/9/2024 280 9:20:14 AM	Unable to create user account authlogicsdemo.com\ame.threats (ame.threats@authlogicsdemo.com) as it already exists.	server.authlogicsdemo.com		



5.9.4 Viewing and disabling devices for a user account

A user account can be linked to up to ten devices running a soft token app. These can be assigned through the Web Management Portal, the MMC or the User Self Service Portal.

To view or disable a device:

- 1. Select the user account that owns the device.
- 2. In the User section, click **Devices**.

•	🤉 Web Management Portal 🛛 🗙 🕂						-	- 1	כ	×
÷	→ C ONot secure https://server	authlogics	demo.com:14443/admin#/user/ame.threa	ts/devices			☆		0	:
Sys	tem	Device	es (ame.threats)							^
	Dashboards ^									
	Password Security		Device	Credential	Enabled	Status				
	Multi-Factor Authentication		Apple iOS	1681 8921 1245 2374	Yes	paired				
	System Status		Yubico YubiKey	vvcv juvk nllc	Yes					
	Reports									
	Users									
Use	r									
	Account									
	Events									
	Devices									
	Pattern									
	One Time Code									
	Two-Way ID									
										-

3. Select the device to modify.

•	📀 Web Management Portal 🛛 🗙	+			-	
←	→ C ONot secure https://sec	rver.authlogicsdemo.com:14443/admin#/user/	'ame.threats/devices		☆ 🛛	
му	riD	÷			은 adminis	st
Sys	tem Dashboards	Devices (ame.threats)				
	Password Security	Device	Credential	Enabled	Status	
	Multi-Factor Authentication	Apple iOS	1681 8921 1245 2374	Yes	paired	
	System Status	Yubico YubiKey	vvcv juvk nllc	Yes		
	Reports					
	Users	Edit Device Remove Device				
Use	er					
	Account					
	Events					
0	Devices					
	Pattern					
	One Time Code					





4. Click Edit Device.

•	🖓 Web Management Portal 🛛 🗙	+	- 0	×
←	→ C ONot secure https://s	erver.authlogicsdemo.com:14443/admin#/user/ame.threats/devices/edit/1681892112452374	* 🛛 🌖	:
Му	iD	=	A administrator →	*
Sys	tem Dashboards	Edit Device (ame.threats)		
	Password Security	EDIT DEVICE		
	System Status	Device		
	Reports	Apple iOS		
	Users	Credential 1681892112452374		
Use	r	Enabled		
	Account	Yes		
	Events			
۵	Devices	Save		
	Pattern			
0	One Time Code			*

You are now viewing the details of the device.

- 5. To change the enabled status of the device:
 - To disable the device, set Enabled to ${\tt No.}$
 - To enable the device, set **Enabled** to Yes.
- 6. To confirm the enabled status of the device, click Save.

•	📀 Web Management Portal 🛛 🗙 🕂					-		×
÷	→ C ONot secure https://server	authlogics.	demo.com:14443/admin#/user/ame.threa	ats/devices		☆ 🛛	•	:
(Му								
System Devices (ame.threats)								
TIT	Password Security Device updated successfully.							
	System Status		Device	Credential	Enabled	Status		
Ē	Reports		Apple IOS	1681 8921 1245 2374	No	paired		
<u> </u>	Users		Yubico YubiKey	vvcv juvk nllc	Yes			
Use	۲							
ĉ	Account							
p	Events							
۵	Devices							
88	Pattern							
0	One Time Code							

The enabled status of the device is now changed.



5.9.5 Removing a device from a user account

To remove a device:

- 1. Select the user account from which you want to remove the device.
- 2. In the User section, click **Devices**.

V 😯 Web Management Portal X	+				- 0	×
← → ♂ ⊘ Not secure https://ser	ver.authlogi	csdemo.com:14443/admin#/use	r/ame.threats/devices		☆ 🛛 💿	÷
System	Devic	es (ame.threats)			^
¦†¦ Dashboards ∧						1
Password Security		Device	Credential	Enabled	Status	
Multi-Factor Authentication	0	Apple iOS	1681 8921 1245 2374	Yes	paired	
System Status	0	Yubico YubiKey	vvcv juvk nllc	Yes		
🖹 Reports						
දා, Users						
User						
은 Account						
D Events						
Devices						
BB Pattern						
One Time Code						
🐣 Two-Way ID						
						-

- 3. Select the device that you want to remove.
- 4. Click Remove Device.

•	😯 Web Management Portal 🛛 🗙	+					- 0	×
÷	→ C ONot secure https://se	erver.authlogics	demo.com:14443/admin#/use	/ame.threats/devices			☆ 🛛 🍕	•
(M)	viD	=					ి administrator	×
			Confirm Remove Device					
	stem	Device						
	Dashboards ^		Are you sure you wish to rem	ove this device?				
	Password Security					Enabled	Status	
	Multi-Factor Authentication				Cancel Remove	Yes	paired	
	System Status		Yubico YubiKey	vvcv juvk nllc		Yes		
	Reports							
	Users		Remove Device					
	er							
	Account							
	Events							
	Devices							
	Pattern							
	One Time Code							
	Two-Way ID							





5. Click **Remove** to confirm that you want to remove the device.

	Web Management Portal	×	+								-	Ø	×
<i>←</i>	C O Not secure https:/	//server.	authlogicsdemo.	com:14443/admin	P/user/ame.threats/devices			A ⁶ G	Ф	£°≡	@ %		0
му	iD	=								옷 Ad	ministrator	· Î	0
Sys	tem	D	evices (a	ame.threa	ats)							_	•
ŧţţ	Dashboards ^											. 1	+
	Password Security		Device remov	ed successfully.							\times		
	Multi-Factor Authentication			Device		Gredential	Enabled	Status					
	System Status		0	Apple iOS		1681 8921 1245 2374	Vec	naired					
ß	Reports												
e,	Users												
Use	ır												
ዳ	Account											_	
μ	Events											_	
۵	Devices												
88	Pattern												
0	One Time Code												
۵	Two-Way ID												
												-	. 🚳

The device is now removed.



5.10 Web Management Portal dashboards

To use the Web Management Portal dashboards, in the System section of the Web Management Portal, click **Dashboards**.

The Dashboard is broken into the following categories:

· System Status.

See section 5.10.1, System Status.

 Multi-Factor Authentication – the availability of this is dependent on applied MFA and PSM licenses.

See section 5.10.2, Multi-Factor Authentication.

Password Security – the availability of this is dependent on applied MFA and PSM licenses.

See section 5.10.3, Password Security.

5.10.1 System Status

The System Status area of the Dashboards shows all the MyID Authentication servers, Domain Controllers, and applied licenses through the deployment.

Each server listing shows the role of the server in the environment (whether it is a MyID Authentication Server and/or a Domain Controller), the server's availability state, and lists MyID's ability to access the server's Windows Event Logs.

The license components show the applied licenses, the validity of the licenses, the quantities of the license assigned and used, as well as the license's expiry date.

•	Web Management Portal	× +						-	- 1		×
←	→ C ONot secure http:	s://server.a	uthlogicsdemo.com:14443	/admin#/system-dashboard				☆		0	:
Му											*
Sys	stem	10									
	Dashboards ^		SERVER.AUTHLOGICSDEI Authentication Server Active	MO.COM							
			Version								
	Multi-Factor Authentication	dtl-Factor Authentication 5.0.1100.0									
			COVER AUTULO CLOOPE								
			Domain Controller Available	NO.COM							
Us	Remote Eventlog (Version) User Available, Connected (4.2.1030.0)										
			MULTI-FACTOR AUTHENT	TICATION LICENCES		PASSWORD SECURITY	MANAGEMENT LICENCES				
			1000 Users	17 Used	R	777 Users	3 Used		ß		
			Valid	Expires:		Valid	Expires:				+



5.10.2 Multi-Factor Authentication

The Multi-Factor Authentication dashboard shows a near-live view of:

• Authentication Requests – displays all valid and invalid MFA authentication requests over the selected period.

AUTHE Last 7 D	NTICATION REQU	JESTS							
(all)					✓ Last 7 Days				~
12 - 9 - 3 -				I			-		
	06 Feb	07 Feb	08 Feb	09 Feb	10 Feb Valid 📕 Invalid	11 Feb	12 Feb	13 Feb	14 Feb

• Authentication Request By Type – breaks down successful authentication requests by MyID MFA authentication type.





• Users By Authentication Type – displays the total number of users who are provisioned to each MyID MFA authentication type.



 Users By Device – displays the percentages of device types that are provisioned to users.



Multi-Factor Authentication dashboards reflect the information across the Active Directory forest or for each domain over the selected period. All dashboard reports can be downloaded to SVG or CSV formats.



5.10.3 Password Security

The Password Security Dashboard shows a near-live view of:

• External Breaches – shows the password breaches for the organization according to the MyID Password Breach database.

ernai breaches								
cme.com								
400								
								·•
00								
200								
100								
				·				
0	•••	•		— •				
2013	2014	2015	2016	2017	2018	2019	2020	2021

• **Total Accounts at Risk** – shows the number of accounts using breached or shared passwords as detected over the specified period.



• Failed Password Changes – shows the failed password changes and the reason for the password rejection over the selected time period.





• Users Accounts at Risk – shows all the accounts with passwords that are shared, breached, blank, or soon to expire. This dashboard also shows dormant accounts.

Accounts At Risk Latest			
(all)			~
		Shared	
	Shared Breached	Account Name	
35.0% 32.5%	Blank	carrottop	
	 Expiring Dormant 	carrynation	
		carygrant	
		caseykasem	
32.5%		caseystengel	
		□ I View All	

If you click **View All**, all the accounts that fall under the highlighted category are displayed.

Password Security dashboards reflect the information across the Active Directory forest or for each domain over the selected period. All dashboard reports can be downloaded to SVG or CSV formats.



5.11 Customizing the portal interfaces

You can customize the portal interfaces in the following ways:

- Customize authentication for the Web Management Portal or the Self Service Portal. See section 5.11.1, Portal authentication type settings.
- Customize the IdP logon page.
 See section 5.11.2, IdP Logon Page customization.
- Customize the Self Service Portal.
 See section 5.11.3, SSP customization.
- Carry out advanced customization of the Self Service Portal.
 See section 5.11.4, Advanced Self Service Portal UI customization.

5.11.1 Portal authentication type settings

The Self Service Portal and Web Management Portal support both Windows Authentication and other forms of authentication – for example, One Time Codes and Grids.

A logon page can be displayed to require strong authentication using MyID supported MFA technologies or password. You can set the logon page to use a specific technology only, or to auto to cater for all MFA technologies at once. In addition, the user's Active Directory password can be required on the logon page.

To change the Self Service Portal or Web Management Portal authentication type, on the relevant application settings' Authentication tab, select the desired **Logon technology** from the dropdown list.

Self Service Portal Properties	×
Authentication Settings OpenID Connect	
Internal Authentication	
Logon technology: Automatic ~	
Allow any user configured technology	
Allow Deviceless MFA	
Enable Passwordless MFA	
Password reset via: SMS / Text Email	
External Authentication	
External Identities linked with this Application:	
Google External Identity Live External Identity	
OK Cancel Apply	





Web Management Portal P	roperties	×				
Authentication OpenID Cor	nnect					
Internal Authentication						
Logon technology:	utomatic 🗸 🗸 🗸					
	Allow any user configured technology					
	Allow Deviceless MFA					
	Enable Passwordless MFA					
Password reset via:	SMS / Text Email					
External Authentication						
External Identities linke	d with this Application:					
Google External Identity						
	OK Cancel Apply					

5.11.1.1 Using Deviceless OTP with non-Windows authentication

MyID Grid Pattern and Phrase questions can be displayed on the login page to cater for Deviceless OTP authentication. If Deviceless OTP authentication is not required, the logon challenge can be disabled on the logon page.

To allow this, enable the Allow Deviceless MFA option on the relevant portal.



5.11.2 IdP Logon Page customization

You can customize the branding look of the IdP logon page by editing settings in the appsettings.json file. This can be found at the following location:

C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\Web\IdP\appsettings.json

Item	Value	Details
LogoPath	/img/logo-colour- transparent.png	A full or relative path to a graphic file such as a company logo.
UserGuideUrl	https://www.intercede.com/wp- content/uploads/2024/03/MyID- Self-Service-Portal-User- Guide-5.0.pdf	A full or relative path to a downloadable user guide document.
PasswordLabelText	Password	Any custom text to help the user know which password is required; for example, Coprnet Password.

Note: The installer does *not* maintain backups of the appsettings.json files so manual backups should be taken.

Note: Editing other values in the appsettings.json files is not supported.





5.11.3 SSP customization

You can customize the branding look and other user interface features of the Self Service Portal page by editing settings in the appsettings.json file. This can be found at the following location:

C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\Web\SSP\appsettings.json

Item	Value	Details
Title	Self Service Portal	Any custom text. The title of the SSP web page.
DisplayText	Self Service Portal	Any custom text. This is displayed at the top of the SSP web page.
LogoPath	/ssp/img/myid-none-grey.png	A full or relative path to a graphic file such as a company logo.
UserGuideUrl	https://www.intercede.com/w p- content/uploads/2024/03/MyI D-Self-Service-Portal-User- Guide-5.0.pdf	A full or relative path to a downloadable user guide document.





Item	Value	Details
PasswordLabelText	Password	Any custom text to help the user know which password is required; for example, Coprnet Password.
IncreasedAccessibilityRequiremen ts	False	If set to True, this enables the high- contrast UI customization. For more information, see section 5.11.4, Advanced Self Service Portal UI customization.
ShowResetPinGridIndicators	True	If set to False, the user cannot choose to display the numbered indicators that appear when they click on the grid on the Grid Settings screen.

Note: The installer does *not* maintain backups of the appsettings.json files so manual backups should be taken.

Note: Editing other values in the appsettings.json files is not supported.



This is an example of the SSP with the Title set to My Title and the DisplayText set to My Display Text.



Note: While the content of the SSP appears in the primary language of the browser, assuming the language is supported, the Title and the DisplayText are not translated, and you must change them in the appsettings.json file. For information on which languages are supported, see the Language requirements section of the Self Service Portal User Guide.



5.11.4 Advanced Self Service Portal UI customization

You can carry out advanced customization of the Self Service Portal using CSS and JavaScript. The portal has built-in customization files where all customizations can be placed. These are in the following locations:

C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\Web\SSP\wwwroot\css\custom.css

C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\Web\SSP\wwwroot\js\custom.js

There is a high-contrast UI customization file for SSP in the following location:

C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\Web\SSP\wwwroot\css\highcontrast.css

To allow a more accessible, high contrast customization:

- 1. Update your custom CSS file:
 - If you already have UI customizations that you want to preserve, copy the contents of the SSP high-contrast.css file and add it into your custom.css.
 - If you do not have an existing UI customization, rename the SSP high-contrast.css file to custom.css.
- 2. Enable the SSP IncreasedAccessibilityRequirements flag.

For more information, see section 5.11.3, SSP customization.

5.11.4.1 Advanced Web Management Portal UI customization

You can customize the Web Management Portal using CSS. The portal has a built-in customization file where you can place customizations:

C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\Web\Admin\wwwroot\css\custom.css

5.11.4.2 Advanced IdP UI customization

You can customize the IdP login page using CSS. The portal has a built-in customization file where you can place customizations:

C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\Web\IdP\wwwroot\css\custom.css

There is a high-contrast UI customization file for IdP in the following location:

C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\Web\IdP\wwwroot\css\highcontrast.css

To allow a more accessible, high contrast customization, update your custom CSS file:

- If you already have UI customizations that you want to preserve, copy the contents of the IdP high-contrast.css file and add it into your custom.css.
- If you do not have an existing UI customization, rename the IdP high-contrast.css file to custom.css.





5.11.4.3 Advanced UI customization considerations

The web pages within the portal load the custom CSS and JS files automatically. The files are loaded last in the load order to allow custom code to override code in built-in functions if required.

Editing of any other files in the portal folder structure is *not* supported. The custom files may be replaced by future updates or upgrades and existing customizations may not be compatible with future product versions. Intercede is unable to provide product support for any third-party code placed in the custom.css or custom.js files and any additions to the files are done so at your own risk.

Note: The installer attempts to retain your custom.css and custom.js files, but you should always keep a backup of your custom files to ensure they are not lost after an upgrade.



5.12 RADIUS communication

The MyID Authentication Server leverages the Windows Network Policy Server role to provide RADIUS connectivity. This is a high performance and robust RADIUS server that allows you to configure a flexible RADIUS policy, including RADIUS proxy capabilities that can simplify migrations from other token solutions.

The MyID RADIUS server supports only PAP authentication from RADIUS client devices.

You can carry out RADIUS configuration in the MyID MMC as well as the Microsoft Network Policy Server MMC.

MyID PSM & MFA Properties X			
FIDO2 MyID CMS Certificates SMTP Delivery SMS Delivery Licence Grid Options Phrase One Time Code YubiKey OTP Authenticator App General RADIUS Alets Remediation Schedule Grid Pattern Policy			
RADIUS Options Image: Construct of the second sec			
Require AD password before Mobile Push Disable Deviceless Logons			
Enabled 2-Step Logons (Password + OTP via Access-Challenge)			
Maximum time between steps: 60 Seconds Enable RADIUS extensions			
Return AD password to support passwordless logons Reply-Message (18) for use with Access-Challenge:			
Browse			
OK Cancel Apply			

This section contains information on:

- Mobile Push MFA.
- 2-step logons (Access-Challenge).
- · RADIUS extensions.
- · RADIUS server ports and protocols.
- Adding a RADIUS client.
- RADIUS policies.



5.12.1 Mobile Push MFA

You can enable and disable Mobile Push MFA through RADIUS to other mechanisms.

When a RADIUS request is received containing only a username, the MyID Authentication Server triggers a Mobile Push to the user's device only if the user is configured for Mobile Push. You may configure it so that a username and password is required before a Mobile Push notification is triggered; to do this, enable the **Require AD password before Mobile Push** option.

5.12.2 2-step logons (Access-Challenge)

RADIUS Access-Challenge is supported by some RADIUS clients. It allows for a two-step logon process where the client sends their username and password to the server for verification and the server responds with either an Access-Challenge or Access-Reject. If the client supports Access-Challenge, the user is prompted for a second set of credentials, for example an OTP, which are then sent to the server. The server then processes the username and OTP and responds with an Access-Accept (only if an Access-Challenge preceded the request) or Access-Reject.

5.12.3 RADIUS extensions

You can enable RADIUS extensions to send metadata from the server back to the RADIUS client. This can return the following:

- The user's Active Directory password to support single sign-on to certain applications such as Citrix Access Gateway.
- Custom reply text for the RADIUS client to display when using Access-Challenge (where supported by the RADIUS client).

5.12.4 RADIUS server ports and protocols

The MyID RADIUS server uses the IANA assigned ports for authentication and accounting, as well as the unofficial ports for backward compatibility with legacy RADIUS clients.

- Authentication:
 - UDP:1812
 - UDP:1645
- Accounting:
 - UDP:1812
 - UDP:1645

Both IPv4 and IPv6 are supported for communication with RADIUS clients.


5.12.5 Adding a RADIUS client

A RADIUS client device is typically a VPN concentrator or remote access server; however, it can also be a wireless access point or a door access system. RADIUS is a common system used by a multitude of applications and platforms.

Note: This section of the installation process requires Local Administrator rights on the server. Domain rights are not required at this stage.

To add a RADIUS client:

1. Open the Network Policy Server from the Administrative Tools start menu group.



2. Expand the RADIUS Clients and Servers node, and select RADIUS Clients.





3. Right-click RADIUS Clients and click New.

New RADIUS Client	×
Settings Advanced	
⊡ Enable this RADIUS client	
Select an existing template:	
~	
Name and Address	
<u>Friendly name:</u>	
VPN Server	
Address (IP or DNS):	
vpn.authlogicsdemo.com	
Shared Secret	
Select an existing Shared Secrets template:	
None	
To manually type a shared secret, click Manual. To automatically generate a shared secret, click Generate. You must configure the RADIUS client with the same shared secret entered here. Shared secrets are case-sensitive.	
Man <u>u</u> al <u>G</u> enerate	
Confirm shared secret:	
••••••	
OK Cance	:



- 4. On the **Settings** tab, set the following:
 - Enable this RADIUS client ensure that this option is enabled.
 - Friendly name a friendly name for the remote RADIUS client.
 - Address (IP address or DNS) the address of the RADIUS client.

To ensure that entered IP Address or DNS name is valid, click Verify.

 Shared secret – enter and confirm your shared secret, ensuring that the shared secret matches the secret entered on the RADIUS client device. You can also use the Generate option to generate a highly secure random secret.

New RAD	IUS Client		~
Settings	Advanced		
Vendor Specify vendor	RADIUS Sta from the list.	andard for most RADIUS clients, or select the RADIUS client	
Vendor	na <u>m</u> e:		
RADI	JS Standard		\sim
Additior	nal Options		
Acc	ess- <u>R</u> equest	messages must contain the Message-Authenticator attribute	
		OK Car	ncel

- 5. On the **Advanced** tab, ensure that the following are set:
 - Vendor name must be set to RADIUS Standard.
 - Access-Request messages must contain the Message-Authenticator attribute – optional, but must be set the same as on the RADIUS client device.

Note: Ensure that the Message-Authenticator attribute status is set to the same value on the RADIUS client devices as on the RADIUS server. They can either both be enabled or both disabled.



6. Click OK.

Network Policy Server					-		×
<u>File Action View H</u> elp							
🗢 🄿 🙍 📊 🛛 🖬							
NPS (Local)	RADIUS Clients						
RADIUS Clients and Servers RADIUS Clients Remote RADIUS Server Groups Policies	RADIUS	clients allow you to specify t	ne network access serv	ers, that provide access to y	our netw	ork.	
National Accounting	Friendly Name	IP Address	Device Manufacturer	Status			
> 🛃 Templates Management	VPN Server	vpn.authlogicsdemo.com	RADIUS Standard	Enabled			

You may add as many RADIUS clients as required.

5.12.6 RADIUS policies

The MyID Authentication Server installation automatically configures a Connection Request Policy within NPS, which allows MyID to support configured RADIUS clients automatically. A Network Policy is not required as the MyID NPS plug-in functions without one.

If you need to modify the default Connection Request Policy it is recommended that you duplicate (right-click, **Duplicate Policy**) the default policy as a backup and then disable it. Once complete you can modify the duplicated policy as needed.



6 Configuring MyID CMS settings

The MFA Broker Service module allows you to integrate the MyID credential management system (CMS) with MyID MFA. It allows you to use features from both products in an integrated fashion; for example, you can manage both smart cards and PIN grids for your users. The MFA Broker Service allows you to manage credentials in the MyID MFA system using the MyID CMS.

For instructions on configuring the connection between MyID CMS and MyID MFA, see the *MFA Broker Service* guide provided with the MFA Broker Service module.

You can configure the MyID CMS settings in the MyID Authentication Server through the **MyID CMS** tab in Global Settings.

MyID PSM & MFA Properties	×
Grid Options Phrase One Time Code YubiKey OTP Authenticator Application General RADIUS Alerts Remediation Schedule Grid Pattern Polic FIDO2 MyID CMS Certificates SMTP Delivery SMS Delivery Licence	o y e
Intergration Settings	
CMS Server URL: https://myid/web.oauth2	
CMS Callback URL: https://myid/MFABroker	
Client ID: myid.notications	
Client Scope: myid.notications.basic	
Client Secret:	
OK Cancel Apply	



You require the following information to complete the configuration:

• **CMS Server URL** – the MyID CMS OAuth2 Authentication Service URL. For example:

https://myid/web.oauth2

CMS Callback URL – the MyID CMS MFA Broker Service URL.
 For example:

https://myid/MFABroker

Client ID – the MyID CMS Client ID used to authenticate.

For example: myid.notifications

• **Client Scope** – the MyID CMS Client Scope used to authenticate. For example:

myid.notifications.basic

• Client Secret – the MyID CMS Client Secret used to authenticate. For example:

4116e8f9-92e2-48b1-8616-5fb3d130b91d



7 Configuring the PSM password policy

To deploy the MyID PSM Password Policy:

- 1. In Active Directory Group Policy, create a MyID PSM Password Policy.
- 2. Deploy the Domain Controller Agent.
- 3. Make the following Group Policy changes:
 - Assign the MyID Password Policy to the Domain Controllers OU.
 - Assign the MyID Password Policy to the Authlogics Authentication Servers group.
 - Modify the built-in Default Domain Policy.

7.1 Configuring the MyID Password Policy settings

The MyID Authentication Server includes Active Directory Group Policy Template files AuthlogicsPasswordPolicy.admx and AuthlogicsPasswordPolicy.adml, which are used to create policies. The User Configuration section of the GPO can be disabled as the settings only apply to the Computer Configuration.

7.1.1 The PSM Users role

The PSM Users role is disabled by default. To enable it you must assign an Active Directory group to the role. For more information, see section *5.8.4*, *Managing the Password Security Management Users role*.

If the PSM Users role is not enabled, all Active Directory users have the MyID Password Policy applied to them. If enabled, only members of this group have the MyID Password Policy applied to them and non-members have the Exception Password Policy applied to them, which mirrors the equivalent default Windows password policy settings.



7.2 Main settings

Setting	Enable Authlogics Password Policy
Values	Enabled / Disabled
Default	Disabled
Description	This policy setting enables the MyID Password Policy functionality on all Agents and Servers where this Group Policy is applied.
	If you enable this policy complexity and validity checks will be performed on the passwords.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then no password processing will function as per the configured policy thus deeming all passwords as acceptable.

7.2.1 Primary password policy

These settings control the MyID specific password policy. The default settings work in most scenarios and are NIST 800-63B compliant by default.

Setting	Disable Online Password Breach Database checking
Values	Enabled / Disabled
Default	Disabled
Description	This policy setting prevents querying the MyID Password Breach Database in the Cloud consisting of billions of known previously breached passwords.
	If you enable this policy then no checks against the MyID Password Breach Database in the Cloud will be performed.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy a partial HASH of the password will be sent over SSL to Intercede for analysis. The password will be rejected if it is a known/previously breached password to comply with to comply with NIST SP 800-63B.

Setting	Disable Offline Password Breach Database checking
Values	Enabled / Disabled
Default	Disabled
Description	This policy setting prevents querying the offline MyID Password Breach Database installed on the MyID Authentication Server.
	If you enable this policy then no checks against the offline MyID Password Breach Database will be performed.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy passwords will checked against the offline database and will be rejected if it is found in order to comp with NIST SP 800-63B.



Setting	Disable Custom Password Blacklist checking
Values	Enabled / Disabled
Default	Disabled
Description	This policy setting prevents querying the custom Password Blacklist consisting of passwords entered by an administrator.
	If you enable this policy then no checks against the custom Blacklist file will be performed.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then entered passwords will be compared with the contents of the custom blacklist file and is also be available for use by the heuristics engine. The password will be rejected if it is found on the custom blacklist to comply with NIST SP 800-63B.

Setting	Disable Shared Password Protection
Values	Enabled / Disabled
Default	Disabled
Description	This policy setting prevents checking if the password is already in use by another user account in the Domain.
	If you enable this policy then no checks against the Domain for shared passwords will be performed.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy the Domain will be checked and the password will be rejected if it is currently in use.

Setting	Enable Passphrases
Values	(6 - 30)
Default	12
	This policy setting enables the use of passphrases if a password is longer than the specified value. Passphrases do not have to pass the following complexity checks if they are long enough:
	Minimum Lowercase Characters
	Minimum Uppercase Characters
	Minimum Numeric Characters
	Minimum Special Characters
Description	Minimum Unicode Characters
	Maximum Repeating Characters
	Maximum Allowed Characters From Username
	If you enable this policy then the specified complexity checks will be skipped only if the password length is equal to or longer than the specified value.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then users may find it difficult to set a passphrase as all configured complexity checks must pass.



Setting	Override Password Policy for new User Accounts
Values	(1 - 30)
Default	5
Description	This policy setting overrides password the password policy checks for accounts that have been created within a specified time period and will be accepted.
	If you enable this policy, specify the number of seconds from when an account has been created for it to be deemed as being a new account.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the password policy will apply to passwords specified during the Active Directory account creation process.

Setting	Disable Heuristic Scanning
Values	Enabled / Disabled
Default	Disabled
	This policy setting controls the heuristic scanning engine behaviour on password checks. Heuristic scanning will undergo a series of checks where known character replacements are detected and reverted to their original base value and then revalidated for compliance. For example, '@' reverts to 'a', '!' to 'i' etc.
Description	If you enable this policy the heuristic scanning engine will not be active for any checks.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then heuristic scanning will be performed to comply with NIST SP 800-63B against the Offline Password Breach Database, Custom Password Blacklist, all or part of the username, and Month and Day names.



Setting	Enable Cloud Heuristic Scanning
Values	Enabled / Disabled
Default	Disabled
	This policy setting controls the heuristic scanning engine behaviour on passwords with the MyID Password Breach Database in the Cloud. Heuristic scanning will undergo a series of checks where known character replacements are detected and the various derivatives will the evaluated to see if they have been breached. For example, 'e' reverts to 'a', '!' to 'i' etc.
Description	If you enable this policy the heuristic scanning will be used when checking the MyID Password Breach Database.
	Warning: By enabling this policy the full password HASH will be sent over the Internet to MyID as k-Anonymity cannot be used.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then heuristic scanning will not be performed with the MyID Password Breach Database and k-Anonymity will still be used.

7.2.2 Complexity rules

These settings provide fine grain control of password complexity settings.

If you set too many of these settings, users may find it too difficult to choose a memorable password, which may encourage them to write passwords down.

Setting	Disallow Incremental / Numeric-Only changes
Values	Enabled / Disabled
Default	Disabled
Description	This policy setting prevents changing only a single digit, or appending a single digit compared to the existing password.
	If you enable this policy then users must change more than just a single digit compared to their old password.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then entered passwords with a simple numeric change from the previous password will be allowed.
	Note: This check requires that the PSM Wizard has been run and enabled on the domain.

Setting	Disallow First or Last Character being a number
Values	Enabled / Disabled
Default	Disabled
Description	This policy setting disallows passwords that start or end with a numeric character.
	If you enable this policy then users cannot use a password that begins or ends with a number.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then passwords which start or end with a numeric character will be allowed.



Setting	Disallow Month and Day names
Values	Enabled / Disabled
Default	Disabled
Description	This policy setting disallows the use of month and day names in the password.
	If you enable this policy a password will be rejected if a month or day name is found in an entered password.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the check will not be performed.

Setting	Disallow spaces
Values	Enabled / Disabled
Default	Disabled
	This policy setting disallows the use of a space character in a password.
Description	If you enable this policy a password will be rejected if a space is found in an entered password.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the check will not be performed.

Setting	Minimum Password Length
Values	(4 - 127)
Default	8
Description	This policy setting sets the minimum number of characters allowed for a compliant password. Setting this value too high may make the password too difficult for users to remember password, whereas setting this value too low could result in the password becoming too weak and easily guessed or brute forced. The password will be rejected if the length of the password is less than the value specified.
	Note: Consecutive space characters will be counted as a single space character as per NIST SP 800-63B guidance.
	If you enable this policy then you must specify a value.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the default value of 8 will be used to comply with NIST SP 800-63B.



Setting	Maximum Password Length
Values	(4 - 127)
Default	127
Description	This policy setting sets the maximum number of characters allowed for a compliant password. Setting this value too low may stop users from selecting passphrases which are typically more secure than passwords. The password will be rejected if the length of the password is more than the value specified.
	If you enable this policy then you must specify a value.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the default value of 127 will be used to comply with NIST SP 800-63B.

Setting	Minimum Lowercase Characters
Values	(1 - 127)
Default	2
Description	This policy setting sets the minimum number of allowed lowercase characters a compliant password must have. Setting this value too high may make it too difficult for users to enter a valid password, whereas setting this value too low could result in the password becoming too weak and easily guessed or brute forced. The password will be rejected if the number of lowercase letters in the password is less than the value specified.
	If you enable this policy then you must specify a value.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the check will not be performed.

Setting	Minimum Uppercase Characters
Values	(1 - 127)
Default	2
Description	This policy setting sets the minimum number of allowed uppercase characters a compliant password must have. Setting this value too high may make it too difficult for users to enter a valid password, whereas setting this value too low could result in the password becoming too weak and easily guessed or brute forced. The password will be rejected if the number of uppercase letters in the password is less than the value specified.
	If you enable this policy then you must specify a value.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the check will not be performed.



Setting	Minimum Numeric Characters
Values	(1 - 127)
Default	2
Description	This policy setting sets the minimum number of allowed numeric digits a compliant password must have. Setting this value too high may make it too difficult for users to enter a valid password, whereas setting this value too low could result in the password becoming too weak and easily guessed or brute forced. The password will be rejected if the number of numeric digits in the password is less than the value specified. If you enable this policy then you must specify a value. If you disable or do not configure this policy then the check will not be performed.

Setting	Minimum Special Characters
Values	(1 - 127)
Default	2
Description	This policy setting sets the minimum number of allowed special characters a compliant password must have. Setting this value too high may make it too difficult for users to enter a valid password, whereas setting this value too low could result in the password becoming too weak and easily guessed or brute forced. The password will be rejected if the number of special characters in the password is less than the value specified.
	The following are recognised as special characters ! " # % & ' () * , / : ; ? @ [\] _ { }'
	If you enable this policy then you must specify a value.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the check will not be performed.



Setting	Minimum Unicode Characters
Values	(1 - 127)
Default	2
Description	This policy setting sets the minimum number of allowed Unicode characters a compliant password must have. Setting this value too high may make it too difficult for users to enter a valid password, whereas setting this value too low could result in the password becoming too weak and easily guessed or brute forced. The password will be rejected if the number of Unicode characters in the password is less than the value specified.
	Unicode characters are non-printable characters that are not punctuation or alphanumeric characters.
	If you enable this policy then you must specify a value.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the check will not be performed.

Setting	Maximum Repeating Characters	
Values	(0 - 126)	
Default	8	
Description	This policy setting sets the maximum number of times a character can be repeated anywhere within a compliant password. Setting this value too low may make it too difficult for users to enter a valid password, whereas setting this value too high could result in the password becoming too weak and easily guessed or brute forced. The password will be rejected if a character is repeated in the password more times than the value specified.	
	If you enable this policy then you must specify a value.	
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the check will not be performed to comply with NIST SP 800-63B.	



Setting	Maximum Consecutive Repeating Characters		
Values	(0 - 126)		
Default	3		
Description	This policy setting sets the maximum number of times a character can be repeated anywhere within a compliant password. Setting this value too low may make it too difficult for users to enter a valid password, whereas setting this value too high could result in the password becoming too weak and easily guessed or brute forced. The password will be rejected if a character is repeated in the password more times than the value specified.		
	If you enable this policy then you must specify a value.		
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the check will not be performed to comply with NIST SP 800-63B.		

Setting	Maximum Sequential Characters	
Values	(0 - 127)	
Default	3	
Description	This policy setting sets the maximum number of times a sequence of characters can be used within a compliant password. Setting this value too low may make it too difficult for users to enter a valid password, whereas setting this value too high could result in the password becoming too weak and easily guessed or brute forced. The password will be rejected if the number of characters in a sequence is more than the value specified.	
	Sequential characters are both forward and backwards i.e. ABC and CBA are deemed to be sequential.	
	If you enable this policy then you must specify a value.	
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the check will not be performed to comply with NIST SP 800-63B.	

Setting	Maximum Sequential Keyboard Characters	
Values	(0 - 5)	
Default	2	
	This policy setting sets the maximum sequential keyboard characters allowed within a compliant password. The password will be rejected if the number of keyboard layout characters in sequence is more than the value specified.	
Description	Sequential characters are both forward and backwards i.e. " $qwerty$ " and " $ytrewq$ " with both be deemed to be sequential.	
	If you enable this policy then you must specify a value.	
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the check will not be performed.	



Setting	Maximum Allowed characters from User Account name	
Values	(1 - 127)	
Default	3	
Description	This policy setting sets the maximum number of characters from a user account name that are allowed in a password. Passwords will be rejected if the number of characters from the user account name in a password is more than this value specified. e.g. If the user account name is Robert and the value is 3 then passwords containing "robe", "ober" and "bert" will be rejected.	
	If you enable this policy then you must specify a value.	
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the check will not be performed.	

Setting	Allow Full User Account name in password	
Values	Enabled / Disabled	
Default	Disabled	
Description	This policy setting allows the use of the full user account name within the password.	
	If you enable this policy a password will not be blocked if the full user account name is found within the entered password.	
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the password may not contain the full user account name to comply with NIST SP 800-63B.	



7.2.3 Dynamic password expiry

These settings dynamically control the maximum age of a password depending on its length. This allows for passwords to be used for longer the longer they are, which encourages users to create longer, and thus more secure, passwords.

A password is matched to the highest zone possible depending on the length of the password. When MyID detects that a password has dynamically expired, the user account is be configured to change password at next logon.

There are five password expiry zones, each consisting of a minimum password length and maximum password age in days. A sixth zone can be used to configure accounts to never expire if they are over the specified length.

Setting	Password Expiry Default Zone	
Values	Maximum Age in days: (1 - 999)	
Default	42	
	This policy setting configures the default password expiry period.	
Description	If a password length is unknown or less than what is required by any other Zone then the Default Zone will apply.	
	Note: If a password was created prior to installing MyID its length will be unknown and the Default Zone will apply. Once the password has been changed the length will be known and other Zones may then apply.	
	If you enable this policy you must specify the Maximum Age in days until the user account's password will be set to expire.	
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the setting will not take effect.	

Setting	Password Expiry Zone 1	
Values	Minimum Password Length: (6 - 100)	Maximum Age in days: (1 - 999)
Default	8	60
	This policy setting configures the dynamic password expiry period for this zone.	
Description	If you enable this policy you must specify both the Minimum Password Length for which this policy shall take effect and the Maximum Age in days until the user account's password will be set to expire.	
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the zone setting will not take effect.	



Setting	Password Expiry Zone 2	
Values	Maximum Age in days: (1 - 999)	Maximum Age in days: (1 - 999)
Default	90	90
	This policy setting configures the dynamic password expiry period for this zone.	
Description	If you enable this policy you must specify both the Minimum Passwo Length for which this policy shall take effect and the Maximum Age i days until the user account's password will be set to expire.	
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the zone setting will not take effect.	

Setting	Password Expiry Zone 3	
Values	Minimum Password Length: (6 - 100)	Maximum Age in days: (1 - 999)
Default	10	180
Description	This policy setting configures the dynamic password expiry period for this zone.	
	If you enable this policy you must specify both the Minimum Password Length for which this policy shall take effect and the Maximum Age in days until the user account's password will be set to expire.	
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the zone setting will not take effect.	

Setting	Password Expiry Zone 4	
Values	Minimum Password Length: (6 - 100)	Maximum Age in days: (1 - 999)
Default	11	270
Description	This policy setting configures the dynamic password expiry period for this zone.	
	If you enable this policy you must specify both the Minimum Password Length for which this policy shall take effect and the Maximum Age in days until the user account's password will be set to expire.	
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the zone setting will not take effect.	



Setting	Password Expiry Zone 5	
Values	Minimum Password Length: (6 - 100)	Maximum Age in days: (1 - 999)
Default	12	365
	This policy setting configures the dynamic password expiry period for this zone.	
Description	If you enable this policy you must specify both the Minimum Password Length for which this policy shall take effect and the Maximum Age in days until the user account's password will be set to expire.	
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the zone setting will not take effect.	

Setting	Password Never Expires Zone	
Values	Minimum Password Length: (6 - 100)	
Default	20	
	This policy setting configures the dynamic password expiry period for this zone.	
Description	If you enable this policy you must specify both the Minimum Password Length for which this policy shall take effect.	
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the zone setting will not take effect.	

7.2.4 Exception password policy

These settings control the exception settings to the Primary Password Policy. The default settings mirror the equivalent default Windows password policy settings.

These settings apply only to the users who are *not* members of the PSM Users role, if you have configured a group for that role. For more information, see section 7.1.1, *The PSM Users role*.

Setting	Maximum Password Age	
Values	Maximum Age in days: (1 - 999)	
Default	42	
Description	This policy setting configures the maximum password age for accounts that are NOT a member of the PSM Users Role.	
	If you enable this policy you must specify the Maximum Age in days until the user account's password will be set to expire.	
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the setting will not take effect.	



Setting	Minimum Password Length
Values	(1 - 127)
Default	7
Description	This policy setting sets the minimum number of characters allowed for a compliant password for accounts that are NOT a member of the PSM Users Role. Setting this value too high may make the password too difficult for users to remember password, whereas setting this value too low could result in the password becoming too weak and easily guessed or brute forced. The password will be rejected if the length of the password is less than the value specified. If you enable this policy then you must specify a value.

Setting	Mirror Windows 'Password Complexity' requirements
Values	Enabled / Disabled
Default	Disabled
Description	This policy setting mirrors the Windows built in 'Password must meet complexity requirements' restriction for accounts that are NOT a member of the PSM Users Role. This check ensures that a password does not contain the username, that it contains a minimum of 3 of the following character types: uppercase, lowercase, numeric, non-alphabetic/special characters.
	If you disable or do not configure this policy then the check will not be performed.



7.3 Modifying the default domain policy

The following password settings apply to the Default Domain Policy by default:

🔜 Eile Action View Window Help	-	8 ×
Image: State GPOs Default Domain Policy Image: State GPOs State GPOs Image: State GPOs Minimum password age Image: State GPOs Minimum password age Image: State GPOs State GPOs Image: State GPOs Minimum password age Image: State GPOs State Compute Complexity requirements Image: State GPOs State Co	show all hide hide hide hide hide	
Account Policies/Account Lockout Policy Account Policies/Kerberos Policy Local Policies/Security Options Public Key Policies/Encrypting File System User Configuration (Enabled) No settings defined.	show show show show hide	

The following password settings for the Default Domain Policy must be changed so that the built-in Windows policy does not conflict with the MyID Password Policy and NIST guidance:

• Maximum password age: 0

This should be set to 0 when MyID PSM **Dynamic Password Complexity** is used, or to comply with NIST SP 800-63, which states that passwords should not periodically expire.

• Minimum password length: 1

This should be set to 1 so that it does not conflict with MyID PSM **Minimum Password Length** complexity rule setting.

• Passwords must meet complexity requirements: Disabled

This should be set to Disabled to allow the MyID PSM policy to function, or to comply with NIST SP 800-63B which states that passwords should not be forced to contain complexity rules.





Note: You *must not* set these settings to Not Configured, as this causes Windows to revert to default settings.

Group Policy Management Editor				
ie Action Yiew Help im Im Im im Im Im im Computer Configuration Im im Computer Configuration Im im Policies Im im Software Settings Im im Name Resolution Policy Im im Startup/Shutdown) Im im Account Policies Im im Account Policies Im im Account Policies Im im Account Policy Im <th>Group Policy Management Editor Policy Enforce password history Maximum password age Minimum password age Minimum password length Password must meet complexity requirements Store passwords using reversible encryption</th> <th>Policy Setting 24 passwords remembered 0 1 days 1 characters Disabled Disabled</th>	Group Policy Management Editor Policy Enforce password history Maximum password age Minimum password age Minimum password length Password must meet complexity requirements Store passwords using reversible encryption	Policy Setting 24 passwords remembered 0 1 days 1 characters Disabled Disabled		
A Cocal Policies				

7.4 Configuring custom password blacklist checking

MyID PSM provides administrators with the ability to add their own unwanted passwords to a blacklist text file. The blacklist allows for the rejection password based on full passwords as well as those matching wildcard characters, * and #. For more information on wildcard characters, see section 7.4.1, Wildcard usage within local blacklist.

The heuristics engine also adds further protection to the file by substituting common letter substitutions withing passwords, for example @ to a, and 5 to s.

To enable the local password blacklist, modify the contents of the following text file:

C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\blacklist.txt

Once a blacklist file has been updated it must be copied to all MyID Authentication Servers. The file is not required to be placed on Domain Controllers.

The custom blacklist can be disabled by emptying the contents of the file or by enabling the **Disable Custom Password Blacklist checking** Group Policy.

7.4.1 Wildcard usage within local blacklist

To enforce password rejection, full words and the wildcards characters * and # can be added to the local blacklist file. If a password matches what is defined in the local blacklist file, the password is rejected. How a password is processed depends on the positioning of the wildcard in the entry.

The wildcard * refers to any character for any length, if a * is entered on its own, all passwords are rejected.

The wildcard # refers to a single numeric character and translates to 9 - ## = 99. Numeric characters within passwords are converted to a number and then, if they are less than the restricted value, the password is rejected.



This table shows examples of how MyID Authentication Server processes a password based on the blacklist entry:

Blacklist Entry	Description	Password	Result
Authlogics	Reject any direct matches	Authlogics	Rejected
	to the restricted word Authlogics.	Authlogics01	Accepted
Auth*	Reject any password	Authlogics	Rejected
	starting with Auth.	HelloAuthlogics	Accepted
Auth	Reject any password with	Authlogics01	Accepted
	Auth in the middle.	helloAuth123	Rejected
*Auth	Reject any password	helloAuth123	Accepted
	ending with Auth.	Authlogics	Accepted
		helloAuth	Rejected
Authlogics##	Reject any password	Authlogics12	Rejected
	starting with word Authlogics ending in two digits.	Authlogics12	Rejected
		Authlogics112	Accepted
		Helloworld12	Accepted
##Authlogics	Reject any password	12Authlogics	Rejected
	starting with two digits and	123Authlogics	Accepted
	Authlogics.		
##*	Reject any password	12Authlogics	Reiected
	starting with two digits.	Authlogics12	Accepted
		1Authlogics	Accepted
		123Authlogics	Rejected
*##	Reject any password	12Authlogics	Accepted
	ending with two digits.	Authlogics12	Rejected
		Authlogics123	Accepted
##	Reject any password with	12Authlogics	Accepted
	two consecutive digits in the middle of the password.	Authlogics12	Accepted
		Auth12logics	Rejected
		Authlogics123	Accepted



8 Advanced configuration

Advanced configuration options for MyID are controlled using the Windows registry. The following entries are created during the installation of MyID server components and most of them should typically only be changed if instructed by Intercede support.

Note: After changing a registry key on the MyID Server, the IIS components must be restarted by running IISRESET from an elevated admin command prompt.

You can carry out the following:

- Specify Active Directory Domain Controllers.
 See section 8.1, Specifying Active Directory Domain Controllers.
- Add an SSL certificate. See section 8.2, Adding a trusted SSL certificate for secure connections.
- Configure the connection timeout for Active Directory. See section 8.3, Active Directory timing.
- Log diagnostic messages.

See section 8.4, Diagnostics logging.

Important: Changing other registry values is *not* supported unless instructed by Intercede Support.



8.1 Specifying Active Directory Domain Controllers

The MyID Authentication Server automatically locates Domain Controllers as needed. In environments where network segmentation exists, the MyID Authentication Server may not be able to contact all Domain Controllers. This can cause connectivity problems and logon delays.

In these environments, you can specify which Domain Controllers and Global Catalog Servers should be used using registry keys. Each key can contain one or many server names (FQDN recommended) separated by commas.

8.1.1 Specifying Global Catalog Servers

To specify the global catalog server to access from the MyID Authentication Server, set the following registry value:

HKLM\SOFTWARE\Authlogics\Authentication Server\DomainGCs

By default, this is blank.

Accepted values:

• One or more server names (FQDN recommended), separated by commas.

Used by components: MyID Authentication Server; Management Console

The MyID Authentication Server attempts to connect to each specified global catalog server and then remains connected to the server that responds to LDAP queries the quickest.

Note: This setting disables the auto-detect global catalog servers functionality within MyID.

8.1.2 Specifying Domain Controllers

To specify the Domain Controllers to access from the MyID Authentication Server, set the following registry value:

HKLM\SOFTWARE\Authlogics\Authentication Server\DomainDCs

By default, this is blank.

Accepted values:

• One or more Domain Controller names (FQDN recommended), separated by commas.

Used by components: MyID Authentication Server; Management Console

The MyID Authentication Server attempts to connect to each specified Domain Controller and then remains connected to the server that responds to LDAP queries the quickest. The MyID Authentication Server initially finds the names of all the Domains in the Forest, and the Domain Controllers in each Domain by querying the Global Catalog. It then maps the results against the Domain Controllers list in the registry to calculate which server to use for each Domain. If a Domain does not have a Domain Controllers specified, one is selected automatically.

Note: This setting disables the auto-detect Domain Controller functionality within MyID.



8.2 Adding a trusted SSL certificate for secure connections

When replacing the self-signed SSL certificate on the MyID server with an alternative from a trusted root authority, the certificate must obey the following:

- The Common Name (CN or SAN) in the certificate must match the DNS value use by MyID agents or make use of a wide card certificate.
- The certificate must be trusted by all systems that connect directly to the MyID server.

To do the replacing, using Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager, edit the HTTPS IIS bindings for the MyID web site and select the new SSL certificate.

8.3 Active Directory timing

You can set the following values in the registry:

- Domain access timeout.
- Domain controller refresh.

8.3.1 Domain access timeout

HKLM\SOFTWARE\Authlogics\Authentication Server\DomainAccessTimeout

Default value: 60

Accepted values:

- 0 disabled, indefinite timeout.
- 1 to 120 timeout in seconds.

The time taken in seconds before a connection established by a MyID component to a Domain Controller times out.

8.3.2 Domain Controller refresh

HKLM\SOFTWARE\Authlogics\Authentication Server\DomainControllerRefeshTime

Default value: 15

Accepted values:

• 1 to 9999 – timeout in minutes.

The time taken in minutes before a new search is done to locate the quickest Global Catalog Server and Domain Controller.



8.4 Diagnostics logging

You can control the diagnostics logging using the Windows registry.

8.4.1 Enabling logging

To enable or disable diagnostics logging, set the following registry value:

HKLM\SOFTWARE\Authlogics\Authentication Server\LoggingEnabled

The default value is 0.

Accepted values:

- 0-disabled.
- 1 enabled.

The MyID Server uses this setting.

When you enable this value, various log files are created in the logging folder. Intercede support may request these logs from you.

8.4.2 Setting the logging location

To control the location of the log file, set the following registry value:

HKLM\SOFTWARE\Authlogics\Authentication Server\LoggingFolder

The default value is:

C:\Program Files\Authlogics Authentication Server\Log

The MyID Server uses this setting.

Accepted values:

• Any valid local folder with the same NTFS permissions as the default folder.



9 Integration with external systems

Intercede provides integration guides for various external systems that may include step-bystep instructions or custom integration components.

You are recommended to use the *MyID Authentication Server Developers Guide* when planning to access the MyID Authentication Server programmatically for automation, scripting, or app integration. You can achieve extensive provisioning and workflow integration by using the Web Services APIs to create, delete, enable, disable accounts.

You can integrate MyID Authentication Server with any other external or third-party systems using Web Services or RADIUS, or a combination of the two.

If you are using Multi-Factor Authentication with an SSL VPN, no logon screen customization is required as a logon challenge is not displayed on a login screen. In this scenario a soft token, hardware token, or a SMS/TEXT token must be used, and the SSL VPN can use RADIUS to validate login requests.

If you are using deviceless authentication with an SSL VPN, you need to modify the login page of the SSL VPN to display a challenge. The SSL VPN can request the image from the MyID server using the GetToken.ashx web service with some coding effort. The SSL VPN can still use RADIUS to validate login requests but may alternatively use Web Services, if supported by the SSL VPN vendor.